**FlexPod Datacenter with VMware vSphere 6.5, NetApp AFF A-Series and Fibre Channel**

Updated:April 21, 2017

**[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_1.jpg)**

**FlexPod Datacenter with VMware vSphere 6.5, NetApp AFF A-Series and Fibre Channel**

Deployment Guide for FlexPod Datacenter with Fibre Channel SAN and VMware vSphere 6.5 and ONTAP 9.1

Last Updated: April 21, 2017

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_2.png)

About Cisco Validated Designs

The CVD program consists of systems and solutions designed, tested, and documented to facilitate faster, more reliable, and more predictable customer deployments. For more information visit

<http://www.cisco.com/go/designzone>.

ALL DESIGNS, SPECIFICATIONS, STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS (COLLECTIVELY, "DESIGNS") IN THIS MANUAL ARE PRESENTED "AS IS," WITH ALL FAULTS.  CISCO AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.  IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE DESIGNS, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

THE DESIGNS ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE.  USERS ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF THE DESIGNS.  THE DESIGNS DO NOT CONSTITUTE THE TECHNICAL OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL ADVICE OF CISCO, ITS SUPPLIERS OR PARTNERS.  USERS SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TECHNICAL ADVISORS BEFORE IMPLEMENTING THE DESIGNS.  RESULTS MAY VARY DEPENDING ON FACTORS NOT TESTED BY CISCO.

CCDE, CCENT, Cisco Eos, Cisco Lumin, Cisco Nexus, Cisco StadiumVision, Cisco TelePresence, Cisco WebEx, the Cisco logo, DCE, and Welcome to the Human Network are trademarks; Changing the Way We Work, Live, Play, and Learn and Cisco Store are service marks; and Access Registrar, Aironet, AsyncOS, Bringing the Meeting To You, Catalyst, CCDA, CCDP, CCIE, CCIP, CCNA, CCNP, CCSP, CCVP, Cisco, the Cisco Certified Internetwork Expert logo, Cisco IOS, Cisco Press, Cisco Systems, Cisco Systems Capital, the Cisco Systems logo, Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS), Cisco UCS B-Series Blade Servers, Cisco UCS C-Series Rack Servers, Cisco UCS S-Series Storage Servers, Cisco UCS Manager, Cisco UCS Management Software, Cisco Unified Fabric, Cisco Application Centric Infrastructure, Cisco Nexus 9000 Series, Cisco Nexus 7000 Series. Cisco Prime Data Center Network Manager, Cisco NX-OS Software, Cisco MDS Series, Cisco Unity, Collaboration Without Limitation, EtherFast, EtherSwitch, Event Center, Fast Step, Follow Me Browsing, FormShare, GigaDrive, HomeLink, Internet Quotient, IOS, iPhone, iQuick Study,  LightStream, Linksys, MediaTone, MeetingPlace, MeetingPlace Chime Sound, MGX, Networkers, Networking Academy, Network Registrar, PCNow, PIX, PowerPanels, ProConnect, ScriptShare, SenderBase, SMARTnet, Spectrum Expert, StackWise, The Fastest Way to Increase Your Internet Quotient, TransPath, WebEx, and the WebEx logo are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned in this document or website are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (0809R)

© 2017 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

[Executive Summary](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541664)

[Solution Overview](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541665)

[Introduction](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541666)

[Audience](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541667)

[Purpose of this Document](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541668)

[What’s New?](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541669)

[Solution Design](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541670)

[Architecture](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541671)

[Physical Topology](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541672)

[Deployment Hardware and Software](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541673)

[Software Revisions](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541674)

[Configuration Guidelines](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541675)

[Physical Infrastructure](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541676)

[FlexPod Cabling](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541677)

[Network Switch Configuration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541678)

[Physical Connectivity](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541679)

[FlexPod Cisco Nexus Base](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541680)

[Set Up Initial Configuration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541681)

[FlexPod Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541682)

[Enable Licenses](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541683)

[Set Global Configurations](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541684)

[Create VLANs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541685)

[Add NTP Distribution Interface](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541686)

[Add Individual Port Descriptions for Troubleshooting](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541687)

[Create Port Channels](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541688)

[Configure Port Channel Parameters](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541689)

[Configure Virtual Port Channels](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541690)

[Uplink into Existing Network Infrastructure](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541691)

[Storage Configuration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541692)

[NetApp All Flash FAS A300 Controllers](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541693)

[NetApp Hardware Universe](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541694)

[Controllers](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541695)

[Disk Shelves](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541696)

[NetApp ONTAP 9.1](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541697)

[Complete Configuration Worksheet](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541698)

[Configure ONTAP Nodes](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541699)

[Login to the Cluster](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541700)

[Zero All Spare Disks](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541701)

[Set Onboard Unified Target Adapter 2 Port Personality](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541702)

[Set Auto-Revert on Cluster Management](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541703)

[Set Up Management Broadcast Domain](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541704)

[Set Up Service Processor Network Interface](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541705)

[Create Aggregates](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541706)

[Verify Storage Failover](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541707)

[Disable Flow Control on 10GbE and 40GbE ports](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541708)

[Disable Unused FCoE Capability on CNA Ports](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541709)

[Configure Network Time Protocol](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541710)

[Configure Simple Network Management Protocol](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541711)

[Configure AutoSupport](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541712)

[Enable Cisco Discovery Protocol](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541713)

[Create Jumbo Frame MTU Broadcast Domains in  ONTAP](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541714)

[Create Interface Groups](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541715)

[Create VLANs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541716)

[Create Storage Virtual Machine](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541717)

[Create Load-Sharing Mirrors of SVM Root Volume](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541718)

[Create Block Protocol (FC) Service](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541719)

[Configure HTTPS Access](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541720)

[Configure NFSv3](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541721)

[Create FlexVol Volumes](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541722)

[Create Boot LUNs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541723)

[Schedule Deduplication](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541724)

[Create FC LIFs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541725)

[Create NFS LIF](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541726)

[Add Infrastructure SVM Administrator](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541727)

[Server Configuration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541728)

[Cisco UCS Base Configuration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541729)

[Perform Initial Setup of Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnects for FlexPod Environments](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541730)

[Cisco UCS Setup](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541731)

[Log in to Cisco UCS Manager](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541732)

[Upgrade Cisco UCS Manager Software to Version 3.1(2f)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541733)

[Anonymous Reporting](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541734)

[Configure Cisco UCS Call Home](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541735)

[Configure Unified Ports](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541736)

[Add Block of IP Addresses for KVM Access](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541737)

[Synchronize Cisco UCS to NTP](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541738)

[Edit Chassis Discovery Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541739)

[Enable Server and Uplink Ports](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541740)

[Acknowledge Cisco UCS Chassis and FEX](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541741)

[Create Uplink Port Channels to Cisco Nexus Switches](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541742)

[Create a WWNN Pool for FC Boot](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541743)

[Create WWPN Pools](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541744)

[Create VSAN](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541745)

[Create FC Uplink Port Channels](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541746)

[Create vHBA Templates](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541747)

[Create SAN Connectivity Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541748)

[Create MAC Address Pools](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541749)

[Create UUID Suffix Pool](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541750)

[Create Server Pool](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541751)

[Create VLANs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541752)

[Modify Default Host Firmware Package](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541753)

[Set Jumbo Frames in Cisco UCS Fabric](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541754)

[Create Local Disk Configuration Policy (Optional)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541755)

[Create Network Control Policy for Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) and Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541756)

[Create Power Control Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541757)

[Create Server Pool Qualification Policy (Optional)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541758)

[Create Server BIOS Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541759)

[Update the Default Maintenance Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541760)

[Create vNIC Templates](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541761)

[Create LAN Connectivity Policy for FC Boot](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541762)

[Create vMedia Policy for VMware ESXi 6.5a Install Boot](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541763)

[Create FC Boot Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541764)

[Create Service Profile Templates](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541765)

[Create vMedia-Enabled Service Profile Template](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541766)

[Create Service Profiles](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541767)

[Add More Servers to FlexPod Unit](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541768)

[Gather Necessary Information](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541769)

[FlexPod Cisco MDS Switch Configuration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541770)

[Enable Licenses](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541771)

[Configure Individual Ports](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541772)

[Cisco MDS 9148S A](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541773)

[Create Port Descriptions - Fabric B](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541774)

[Create VSANs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541775)

[Create Device Aliases](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541776)

[Create Zones](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541777)

[Storage Configuration – Boot LUNs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541778)

[ONTAP Boot Storage Setup](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541779)

[Create igroups](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541780)

[Map Boot LUNs to igroups](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541781)

[VMware vSphere 6.5a Setup](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541782)

[VMware ESXi 6.5a](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541783)

[Download Cisco Custom Image for ESXi 6.5a](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541784)

[Log in to Cisco UCS 6300/6200 Fabric Interconnect](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541785)

[Set Up VMware ESXi Installation](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541786)

[Install ESXi](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541787)

[Set Up Management Networking for ESXi Hosts](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541788)

[Reset VMware ESXi Host VMkernel Port vmk0 MAC Address (Optional)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541789)

[Log in to VMware ESXi Hosts by Using VMware Host Client](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541790)

[Set Up VMkernel Ports and Virtual Switch](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541791)

[Install VMware Drivers for the Cisco Virtual Interface Card (VIC)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541792)

[Mount Required Datastores](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541793)

[Configure NTP on ESXi Hosts](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541794)

[VMware vCenter 6.5](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541795)

[Building the VMware vCenter Server Appliance](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541796)

[Setting Up VMware vCenter Server](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541797)

[Cisco UCS Manager Plug-in for VMware vSphere Web Client](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541798)

[Cisco UCS Manager Plug-in Installation](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541799)

[FlexPod UCS Domain Registration](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541800)

[Using the Cisco UCS vCenter Plugin](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541801)

[FlexPod VMware vSphere Distributed Switch (vDS)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541802)

[Configure the VMware vDS in vCenter](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541803)

[FlexPod Management Tools Setup](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541804)

[NetApp Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1 Deployment Procedure](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541805)

[Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1 Pre-installation Considerations](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541806)

[Install Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541807)

[Register Virtual Storage Console with vCenter Server](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541808)

[Install NetApp NFS VAAI Plug-in](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541809)

[Discover and Add Storage Resources](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541810)

[Optimal Storage Settings for ESXi Hosts](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541811)

[Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1 Provisioning Datastores](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541812)

[Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1 Backup and Recovery](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541813)

[Sample Tenant Provisioning](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541814)

[Appendix](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541815)

[Cisco UCS FCoE Direct Storage Connect Setup](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541816)

[Upgrade Cisco UCS Manager Software to Version 3.1(2f)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541817)

[Anonymous Reporting](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541818)

[Configure Cisco UCS Call Home](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541819)

[Place Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects in Fiber Channel Switching Mode](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541820)

[Edit Chassis Discovery Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541821)

[Enable Server and Uplink Ports](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541822)

[Acknowledge Cisco UCS Chassis and FEX](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541823)

[Create a WWNN Pool for FCoE Boot](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541824)

[Create WWPN Pools](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541825)

[Assign VSANs to FCoE Storage Ports](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541826)

[Create Server Pool](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541827)

[Create VLANs](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541828)

[Modify Default Host Firmware Package](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541829)

[Set Jumbo Frames in Cisco UCS Fabric](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541830)

[Create Local Disk Configuration Policy (Optional)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541831)

[Create Network Control Policy for Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) and Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541832)

[Create Server BIOS Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541833)

[Update the Default Maintenance Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541834)

[Create vNIC Templates](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541835)

[Create LAN Connectivity Policy for FC Boot](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541836)

[Create vMedia Policy for VMware ESXi 6.5a Install Boot](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541837)

[Create Boot Policy (FCoE Boot)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541838)

[Create Service Profile Templates (FCoE Boot)](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541839)

[Create vMedia Service Profile Template](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541840)

[Add More Servers to FlexPod Unit](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541841)

[Gather Necessary Information](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541842)

[Adding Direct Connected Tenant FCoE Storage](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541843)

[Create Storage Connection Policies](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541844)

[Map Storage Connection Policies vHBA Initiator Groups in SAN Connectivity Policy](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541845)

[FlexPod Backups](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541846)

[Cisco UCS Backup](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541847)

[Cisco Nexus Backups](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541848)

[VMware VCSA Backup](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541849)

[Breakout Interface Configuration in the Cisco Nexus 9332PQ Switches](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541850)

[About the Authors](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541851)

[Acknowledgements](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#_Toc480541852)

**Executive Summary**

Cisco Validated Designs include systems and solutions that are designed, tested, and documented to facilitate and improve customer deployments. These designs incorporate a wide range of technologies and products into a portfolio of solutions that have been developed to address the business needs of customers. Cisco and NetApp have partnered to deliver FlexPod, which serves as the foundation for a variety of workloads and enables efficient architectural designs that are based on customer requirements. A FlexPod solution is a validated approach for deploying Cisco and NetApp technologies as a shared cloud infrastructure.

This document describes the Cisco and NetApp® FlexPod Datacenter with Cisco UCS Manager unified software release 3.1(2f) and VMware vSphere 6.5a. Cisco UCS Manager (UCSM) 3.1 provides consolidated support of all current Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect models (6200, 6300, 6324 (Cisco UCS Mini)), 2200/2300 series IOM, Cisco UCS B-Series, and Cisco UCS C-Series.  FlexPod Datacenter with Cisco UCS unified software release 3.1(2f), and VMware vSphere 6.5a is a predesigned, best-practice data center architecture built on the Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS), the Cisco Nexus® 9000 family of switches, MDS 9000 multilayer fabric switches, and NetApp AFF.

**Solution Overview**

**Introduction**

The current industry trend in data center design is towards shared infrastructures. By using virtualization along with pre-validated IT platforms, enterprise customers have embarked on the journey to the cloud by moving away from application silos and toward shared infrastructure that can be quickly deployed, thereby increasing agility and reducing costs. Cisco and NetApp have partnered to deliver FlexPod, which uses best of breed storage, server and network components to serve as the foundation for a variety of workloads, enabling efficient architectural designs that can be quickly and confidently deployed.

**Audience**

The audience for this document includes, but is not limited to; sales engineers, field consultants, professional services, IT managers, partner engineers, and customers who want to take advantage of an infrastructure built to deliver IT efficiency and enable IT innovation.

**Purpose of this Document**

This document provides a step by step configuration and implementation guide for the FlexPod Datacenter with Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects, NetApp AFF, and Cisco Nexus 9000 solution.

**What’s New?**

The following design elements distinguish this version of FlexPod from previous FlexPod models:

         Support for the Cisco UCS 3.1(2f) unified software release, Cisco UCS B200-M4 servers, and Cisco UCS C220-M4 servers

         Support for the latest release of NetApp ONTAP® 9.1

         iSCSI, Fiber channel and NFS storage design

         Validation of VMware vSphere 6.5a

**Solution Design**

**Architecture**

FlexPod is a defined set of hardware and software that serves as an integrated foundation for both virtualized and non-virtualized solutions. VMware vSphere® built on FlexPod includes NetApp All Flash FAS storage, Cisco Nexus® networking, the Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS®), and VMware vSphere software in a single package. The design is flexible enough that the networking, computing, and storage can fit in one data center rack or be deployed according to a customer's data center design. Port density enables the networking components to accommodate multiple configurations of this kind.

One benefit of the FlexPod architecture is the ability to customize or "flex" the environment to suit a customer's requirements. A FlexPod can easily be scaled as requirements and demand change. The unit can be scaled both up (adding resources to a FlexPod unit) and out (adding more FlexPod units). The reference architecture detailed in this document highlights the resiliency, cost benefit, and ease of deployment of a Fiber Channel and IP-based storage solution. A storage system capable of serving multiple protocols across a single interface allows for customer choice and investment protection because it truly is a wire-once architecture.

Figure 1 shows the VMware vSphere built on FlexPod components and the network connections for a configuration with the Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnects. This design has end-to-end 40 Gb Ethernet connections between the Cisco UCS 5108 Blade Chassis and C-Series rackmounts and the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect, between the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect and Cisco Nexus 9000, and between Cisco Nexus 9000 and NetApp AFF A300. This infrastructure option expanded with Cisco MDS switches sitting between the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect and the NetApp AFF A300 to provide FC-booted hosts with block-level access to shared storage.  The reference architecture reinforces the "wire-once" strategy, because as additional storage is added to the architecture, no re-cabling is required from the hosts to the Cisco UCS fabric interconnect.

**Physical Topology**

Figure 1       FlexPod with Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnects

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_3.jpg)

The reference 40Gb based hardware configuration includes:

         Two Cisco Nexus 9332PQ switches

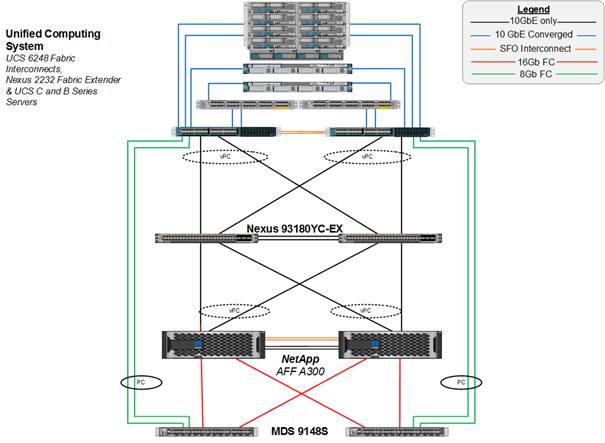
         Two Cisco UCS 6332-16UP fabric interconnects

         Two Cisco MDS 9148S multilayer fabric switches

         One NetApp AFF A300 (HA pair) running ONTAP with Disk shelves and Solid State Drives (SSD)

Figure 2 shows the VMware vSphere built on FlexPod components and the network connections for a configuration with the Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnects. This design is identical to the 6332-16UP based topology, but has 10 Gb Ethernet connecting through a pair of Cisco Nexus 93180YC-EX switches to access iSCSI and NFS access to the AFF A300.  Alternately, the same Cisco Nexus 9332PQ switch can be used with QSFP breakout cables and port configuration settings on the 9332PQ switch.

Figure 2       FlexPod with Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnects

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_4.jpg)

The reference hardware configuration includes:

         Two Cisco Nexus 93180YC-EX switches

         Two Cisco UCS 6248UP fabric interconnects

         Two Cisco MDS 9148S multilayer fabric switches

         One NetApp AFF A300 (HA pair) running ONTAP with Disk shelves and Solid State Drives (SSD)

For server virtualization, the deployment includes VMware vSphere 6.5a.  Although this is the base design, each of the components can be scaled easily to support specific business requirements. For example, more (or different) servers or even blade chassis can be deployed to increase compute capacity, additional disk shelves can be deployed to improve I/O capability and throughput, and special hardware or software features can be added to introduce new features. This document guides you through the low-level steps for deploying the base architecture, as shown in Figure 1 and Figure 2. These procedures cover everything from physical cabling to network, compute and storage device configurations.

**Deployment Hardware and Software**

**Software Revisions**

Table 1 lists the software revisions for this solution.

Table 1    Software Revisions

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Layer | Device | Image | Comments |
| Compute | Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects 6200 and 6300 Series, UCS B-200 M4, UCS C-220 M4 | 3.1(2f) | Includes the Cisco UCS-IOM 2304 Cisco UCS Manager, Cisco UCS VIC 1340 and Cisco UCS VIC 1385 |
| Network | Cisco Nexus 9000 NX-OS | 7.0(3)I4(5) |  |
| Storage | NetApp AFF A300 | ONTAP 9.1 |  |
|  | Cisco MDS 9148S | 7.3(1)D1(1) |  |
| Software | Cisco UCS Manager | 3.1(2f) |  |
|  | Cisco UCS Manager Plugin for VMware vSphere Web Client | 2.0.1 |  |
|  | VMware vSphere ESXi | 6.5a |  |
|  | VMware vCenter | 6.5a |  |
|  | NetApp Virtual Storage Console (VSC) | 6.2.1P1 |  |

**Configuration Guidelines**

This document provides details for configuring a fully redundant, highly available configuration for a FlexPod unit with ONTAP storage. Therefore, reference is made to which component is being configured with each step, either 01 or 02 or A and B. For example, node01 and node02 are used to identify the two NetApp storage controllers that are provisioned with this document, and Cisco Nexus A or Cisco Nexus B identifies the pair of Cisco Nexus switches that are configured. The Cisco UCS fabric interconnects are similarly configured. Additionally, this document details the steps for provisioning multiple Cisco UCS hosts, and these examples are identified as: VM-Host-Infra-01, VM-Host-Infra-02 to represent infrastructure hosts deployed to each of the fabric interconnects in this document. Finally, to indicate that you should include information pertinent to your environment in a given step, <text> appears as part of the command structure. See the following example for the network port vlan create command:

Usage:

network port vlan create ?

 [-node] <nodename>                  Node

 { [-vlan-name] {<netport>|<ifgrp>}  VLAN Name

 |  -port {<netport>|<ifgrp>}        Associated Network Port

 [-vlan-id] <integer> }              Network Switch VLAN Identifier

Example:

network port vlan -node <node01> -vlan-name i0a-<vlan id>

This document is intended to enable you to fully configure the customer environment. In this process, various steps require you to insert customer-specific naming conventions, IP addresses, and VLAN schemes, as well as to record appropriate MAC addresses. Table 3 lists the virtual machines (VMs) necessary for deployment as outlined in this guide. Table 2 describes the VLANs necessary for deployment as outlined in this guide.

Table 2    Necessary VLANs

| VLAN Name | VLAN Purpose | ID Used in Validating This Document |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Out of Band Mgmt | VLAN for out-of-band management interfaces | 13 |
| In-Band Mgmt | VLAN for in-band management interfaces | 113 |
| Native | VLAN to which untagged frames are assigned | 2 |
| NFS | VLAN for Infrastructure NFS traffic | 3050 |
| FCoE-A | VLAN for FCoE encapsulation of VSAN-A | 101 |
| FCoE-B | VLAN for FCoE encapsulation of VSAN-B | 102 |
| vMotion | VLAN for VMware vMotion | 3000 |
| VM-Traffic | VLAN for Production VM Interfaces | 900 |

Table 3  lists the VMs necessary for deployment as outlined in this document.

Table 3    Virtual Machines

| Virtual Machine Description | Host Name |
| --- | --- |
| Active Directory (AD) |  |
| vCenter Server |  |
| NetApp VSC |  |

**Physical Infrastructure**

**FlexPod Cabling**

The information in this section is provided as a reference for cabling the physical equipment in a FlexPod environment. To simplify cabling requirements, the tables include both local and remote device and port locations.

The tables in this section contain details for the prescribed and supported configuration of the NetApp AFF A300 running NetApp ONTAP® 9.1.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For any modifications of this prescribed architecture, consult the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](http://support.netapp.com/matrix/) (IMT).

This document assumes that out-of-band management ports are plugged into an existing management infrastructure at the deployment site. These interfaces will be used in various configuration steps.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Be sure to use the cabling directions in this section as a guide.

The NetApp storage controller and disk shelves should be connected according to best practices for the specific storage controller and disk shelves. For disk shelf cabling, refer to the Universal SAS and ACP Cabling Guide: <https://library.netapp.com/ecm/ecm_get_file/ECMM1280392>.

Figure 3 details the cable connections used in the validation lab for the 40Gb end-to-end with Fibre Channel topology based on the Cisco UCS 6332-16UP fabric interconnect.  Two 16Gb uplinks connect as port-channels to each Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect from the MDS switches, and a total of four 16Gb from the MDS switches to the AFF controllers.  Additional 1Gb management connections will be needed for an out-of-band network switch that sits apart from the FlexPod infrastructure.  Each Cisco UCS fabric interconnect and Cisco Nexus switch is connected to the out-of-band network switch, and each AFF controller has two connections to the out-of-band network switch.

Figure 3       FlexPod Cabling with Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnect

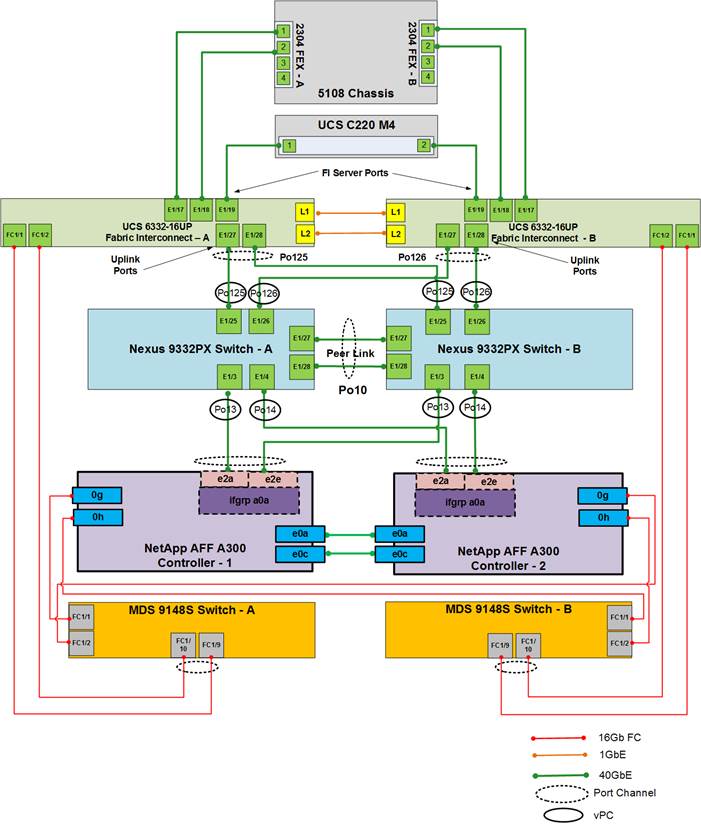
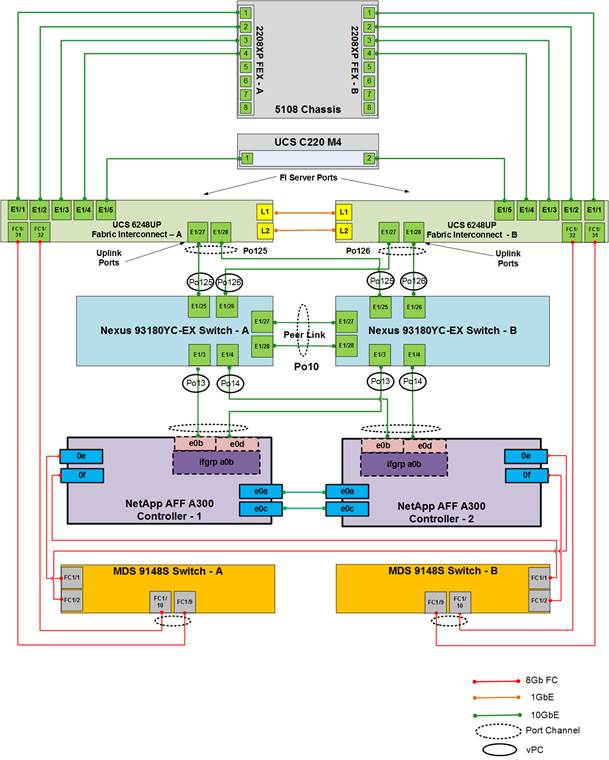
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_5.jpg)

Figure 4 details the cabling connections used in the alternate 10Gb end-to-end topology based on the Cisco UCS 6248UP fabric interconnect using the MDS switches for 8Gb Fibre Channel links.  As with the 40Gb topology, out-of-band connections will also be needed, with each Cisco UCS fabric interconnect and Cisco Nexus Switch will have a connection to the out-of-band network switch, and each AFF controller will have two connections to the out-of-band network switch.

Figure 4       FlexPod Cabling with Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnect

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_6.jpg)

**Network Switch Configuration**

This section provides a detailed procedure for configuring the Cisco Nexus 9000s for use in a FlexPod environment. Follow these steps precisely because failure to do so could result in an improper configuration.

**Physical Connectivity**

Follow the physical connectivity guidelines for FlexPod as covered in the section "FlexPod Cabling."

**FlexPod Cisco Nexus Base**

The following procedures describe how to configure the Cisco Nexus switches for use in a base FlexPod environment.  This procedure assumes the use of Cisco Nexus 9000 7.0(3)I4(5), and is valid for both the Cisco Nexus 9332PQ switches deployed with the 40Gb end-to-end topology, and the Cisco Nexus 93180YC-EX switches used in the 10Gb based topology.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The following procedure includes the setup of NTP distribution on the in-band management VLAN. The interface-vlan feature and ntp commands are used to set this up. This procedure also assumes that the default VRF is used to route the in-band management VLAN.

**Set Up Initial Configuration**

**Cisco Nexus A**

To set up the initial configuration for the Cisco Nexus A switch on <nexus-A-hostname>, complete the following steps:

1.    Configure the switch.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          On initial boot and connection to the serial or console port of the switch, the NX-OS setup should automatically start and attempt to enter Power on Auto Provisioning.

Abort Power on Auto Provisioning and continue with normal setup? (yes/no) [n]: yes

Do you want to enforce secure password standard (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Enter the password for "admin": <password>

Confirm the password for "admin": <password>

Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes

Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enter the switch name: <nexus-A-hostname>

Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Mgmt0 IPv4 address: <nexus-A-mgmt0-ip>

Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: <nexus-A-mgmt0-netmask>

Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

IPv4 address of the default gateway: <nexus-A-mgmt0-gw>

Configure advanced IP options? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa) [rsa]: Enter

Number of rsa key bits <1024-2048> [1024]: Enter

Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [n]: y

NTP server IPv4 address: <global-ntp-server-ip>

Configure default interface layer (L3/L2) [L3]: L2

Configure default switchport interface state (shut/noshut) [shut]: Enter

Configure CoPP system profile (strict/moderate/lenient/dense/skip) [strict]: Enter

  Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

2.    Review the configuration summary before enabling the configuration.

Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

**Cisco Nexus B**

To set up the initial configuration for the Cisco Nexus B switch on <nexus-B-hostname>, complete the following steps:

1.    Configure the switch.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          On initial boot and connection to the serial or console port of the switch, the NX-OS setup should automatically start and attempt to enter Power on Auto Provisioning.

Abort Power on Auto Provisioning and continue with normal setup? (yes/no) [n]: yes

Do you want to enforce secure password standard (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Enter the password for "admin": <password>

Confirm the password for "admin": <password>

Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes

Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enterer the switch name: <nexus-B-hostname>

Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Mgmt0 IPv4 address: <nexus-B-mgmt0-ip>

Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: <nexus-B-mgmt0-netmask>

Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

IPv4 address of the default gateway: <nexus-B-mgmt0-gw>

Configure advanced IP options? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa) [rsa]: Enter

Number of rsa key bits <1024-2048> [1024]: Enter

Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [n]: y

NTP server IPv4 address: <global-ntp-server-ip>

Configure default interface layer (L3/L2) [L3]: L2

Configure default switchport interface state (shut/noshut) [shut]: Enter

Configure CoPP system profile (strict/moderate/lenient/dense/skip) [strict]: Enter

Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

2.    Review the configuration summary before enabling the configuration.

Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

**FlexPod Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration**

**Enable Licenses**

**Cisco Nexus A and Cisco Nexus B**

To license the Cisco Nexus switches, complete the following steps:

1.    Log in as admin.

2.    Run the following commands:

config t

feature interface-vlan

feature lacp

feature vpc

feature lldp

feature nxapi

**Set Global Configurations**

**Cisco Nexus A and Cisco Nexus B**

To set global configurations, complete the following step on both switches:

Run the following commands to set global configurations:

spanning-tree port type network default

spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default

spanning-tree port type edge bpdufilter default

port-channel load-balance src-dst l4port

ntp server <global-ntp-server-ip> use-vrf management

ntp master 3

ip route 0.0.0.0/0 <ib-mgmt-vlan-gateway>

copy run start

**Create VLANs**

**Cisco Nexus A and Cisco Nexus B**

To create the necessary virtual local area networks (VLANs), complete the following step on both switches:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

vlan <ib-mgmt-vlan-id>

name IB-MGMT-VLAN

vlan <native-vlan-id>

name Native-VLAN

vlan <vmotion-vlan-id>

name vMotion-VLAN

vlan <vm-traffic-vlan-id>

name VM-Traffic-VLAN

vlan <infra-nfs-vlan-id>

name Infra-NFS-VLAN

exit

**Add NTP Distribution Interface**

**Cisco Nexus A**

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

ntp source <switch-a-ntp-ip>

interface Vlan<ib-mgmt-vlan-id>

ip address <switch-a-ntp-ip>/<ib-mgmt-vlan-netmask-length>

no shutdown

exit

**Cisco Nexus B**

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

ntp source <switch-b-ntp-ip>

interface Vlan<ib-mgmt-vlan-id>

ip address <switch-b-ntp-ip>/<ib-mgmt-vlan-netmask-length>

no shutdown

exit

**Add Individual Port Descriptions for Troubleshooting**

**Cisco Nexus A**

To add individual port descriptions for troubleshooting activity and verification for switch A, complete the following step:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this step and in the later sections, configure the AFF nodename <st-node> and Cisco UCS 6332-16UP or Cisco UCS 6248UP fabric interconnect clustername <ucs-clustername> interfaces as appropriate to your deployment.

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

interface Eth1/3

description <st-node>-1:e2a

interface Eth1/4

description <st-node>-2:e2a

interface Eth1/25

description <ucs-clustername>-a:1/27

interface Eth1/26

description <ucs-clustername>-b:1/27

interface Eth1/27

description <nexus-hostname>-b:1/27

interface Eth1/28

description <nexus-hostname>-b:1/28

exit

**Cisco Nexus B**

To add individual port descriptions for troubleshooting activity and verification for switch B, complete the following step:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

interface Eth1/3

description <st-node>-1:e2e

interface Eth1/4

description <st-node>-2:e2e

interface Eth1/25

description <ucs-clustername>-a:1/28

interface Eth1/26

description <ucs-clustername>-b:1/28

interface Eth1/27

description <nexus-hostname>-a:1/27

interface Eth1/28

description <nexus-hostname>-a:1/28

exit

**Create Port Channels**

**Cisco Nexus A and Cisco Nexus B**

To create the necessary port channels between devices, complete the following step on both switches:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

interface Po10

description vPC peer-link

interface Eth1/27-28

channel-group 10 mode active

no shutdown

interface Po13

description <st-node>-1

interface Eth1/3

channel-group 13 mode active

no shutdown

interface Po14

description <st-node>-2

interface Eth1/4

channel-group 14 mode active

no shutdown

interface Po125

description <ucs-clustername>-a

interface Eth1/25

channel-group 125 mode active

no shutdown

interface Po126

description <ucs-clustername>-b

interface Eth1/26

channel-group 126 mode active

no shutdown

exit

copy run start

**Configure Port Channel Parameters**

**Cisco Nexus A and Cisco Nexus B**

To configure port channel parameters, complete the following step on both switches:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

interface Po10

switchport mode trunk

switchport trunk native vlan 2

switchport trunk allowed vlan <ib-mgmt-vlan-id>, <infra-nfs-vlan-id>, <vmotion-vlan-id>, <vm-traffic-vlan-id>

spanning-tree port type network

interface Po13

switchport mode trunk

switchport trunk native vlan 2

switchport trunk allowed vlan <infra-nfs-vlan-id>

spanning-tree port type edge trunk

mtu 9216

interface Po14

switchport mode trunk

switchport trunk native vlan 2

switchport trunk allowed vlan <infra-nfs-vlan-id>

spanning-tree port type edge trunk

mtu 9216

interface Po125

switchport mode trunk

switchport trunk native vlan 2

switchport trunk allowed vlan <ib-mgmt-vlan-id>, <infra-nfs-vlan-id>, <vmotion-vlan-id>, <vm-traffic-vlan-id>

spanning-tree port type edge trunk

mtu 9216

interface Po126

switchport mode trunk

switchport trunk native vlan 2

switchport trunk allowed vlan <ib-mgmt-vlan-id>, <infra-nfs-vlan-id>, <vmotion-vlan-id>, <vm-traffic-vlan-id>

spanning-tree port type edge trunk

mtu 9216

exit

copy run start

**Configure Virtual Port Channels**

**Cisco Nexus A**

To configure virtual port channels (vPCs) for switch A, complete the following step:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

vpc domain <nexus-vpc-domain-id>

role priority 10

peer-keepalive destination <nexus-B-mgmt0-ip> source <nexus-A-mgmt0-ip>

peer-switch

peer-gateway

auto-recovery

delay restore 150

interface Po10

vpc peer-link

interface Po13

vpc 13

interface Po14

vpc 14

interface Po125

vpc 125

interface Po126

vpc 126

exit

copy run start

**Cisco Nexus B**

To configure vPCs for switch B, complete the following step:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

vpc domain <nexus-vpc-domain-id>

role priority 20

peer-keepalive destination <nexus-A-mgmt0-ip> source <nexus-B-mgmt0-ip>

peer-switch

peer-gateway

auto-recovery

delay restore 150

interface Po10

vpc peer-link

interface Po13

vpc 13

interface Po14

vpc 14

interface Po125

vpc 125

interface Po126

vpc 126

exit

copy run start

**Uplink into Existing Network Infrastructure**

Depending on the available network infrastructure, several methods and features can be used to uplink the FlexPod environment. If an existing Cisco Nexus environment is present, we recommend using vPCs to uplink the Cisco Nexus switches included in the FlexPod environment into the infrastructure. The previously described procedures can be used to create an uplink vPC to the existing environment. Make sure to run copy run start to save the configuration on each switch after the configuration is completed.

**Storage Configuration**

**NetApp All Flash FAS A300 Controllers**

See the following section (NetApp Hardware Universe) for planning the physical location of the storage systems:

         Site Preparation

         System Connectivity Requirements

         Circuit Breaker, Power Outlet Balancing, System Cabinet Power Cord Plugs, and Console Pinout Requirements

         AFF Series Systems

**NetApp Hardware Universe**

The NetApp Hardware Universe (HWU) application provides supported hardware and software components for any specific ONTAP version. It provides configuration information for all the NetApp storage appliances currently supported by ONTAP software. It also provides a table of component compatibilities.

Confirm that the hardware and software components that you would like to use are supported with the version of ONTAP that you plan to install by using the [HWU application](http://support.netapp.com/NOW/knowledge/docs/hardware/NetApp/syscfg/) at the [NetApp Support](http://support.netapp.com/) site.

1.    Access the [HWU](http://hwu.netapp.com/Home/Index) application to view the System Configuration guides. Click the Controllers tab to view the compatibility between different version of the ONTAP software and the NetApp storage appliances with your desired specifications.

2.    Alternatively, to compare components by storage appliance, click Compare Storage Systems.

**Controllers**

Follow the physical installation procedures for the controllers found in the [AFF A300 Series product documentation](http://mysupport.netapp.com/documentation/productlibrary/index.html?productID=62247) at the [NetApp Support](http://support.netapp.com/) site.

**Disk Shelves**

NetApp storage systems support a wide variety of disk shelves and disk drives. The complete list of [disk shelves](http://support.netapp.com/documentation/productlibrary/index.html?productID=30147) that are supported by the AFF A300 is available at the [NetApp Support](http://support.netapp.com/) site.

When using SAS disk shelves with NetApp storage controllers, refer to the [SAS Disk Shelves Universal SAS and ACP Cabling Guide](https://support.netapp.com/NOW/knowledge/docs/hardware/filer/215-05500_A0.pdf?isLegacy=true) for proper cabling guidelines.

**NetApp ONTAP 9.1**

**Complete Configuration Worksheet**

Before running the setup script, complete the cluster setup worksheet from the [ONTAP 9.1 Software Setup Guide](https://library.netapp.com/ecm/ecm_download_file/ECMLP2492611). You must have access to the [NetApp Support](http://support.netapp.com/) site to open the cluster setup worksheet.

**Configure ONTAP Nodes**

Before running the setup script, review the configuration worksheets in the [ONTAP 9.1 Software Setup Guide](https://library.netapp.com/ecm/ecm_download_file/ECMLP2492611) to learn about configuring ONTAP. Table 4 lists the information needed to configure two ONTAP nodes. Customize the cluster detail values with the information applicable to your deployment.

Table 4    ONTAP Software Installation Prerequisites

| Cluster Detail | Cluster Detail Value |
| --- | --- |
| Cluster node 01 IP address | <node01-mgmt-ip> |
| Cluster node 01 netmask | <node01-mgmt-mask> |
| Cluster node 01 gateway | <node01-mgmt-gateway> |
| Cluster node 02 IP address | <node02-mgmt-ip> |
| Cluster node 02 netmask | <node02-mgmt-mask> |
| Cluster node 02 gateway | <node02-mgmt-gateway> |
| Data ONTAP 9.1 URL | <url-boot-software> |

**Configure Node 01**

To configure node 01, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to the storage system console port. You should see a Loader-A prompt. However, if the storage system is in a reboot loop, press Ctrl-C to exit the autoboot loop when the following message displays:

Starting AUTOBOOT press Ctrl-C to abort…

2.    Allow the system to boot up.

autoboot

3.    Press Ctrl-C when prompted.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          If ONTAP 9.1 is not the version of software being booted, continue with the following steps to install new software. If ONTAP 9.1 is the version being booted, select option 8 and y to reboot the node. Then continue with step 14.

4.    To install new software, select option 7.

5.    Enter y to perform an upgrade.

6.    Select e0M for the network port you want to use for the download.

7.    Enter y to reboot now.

8.    Enter the IP address, netmask, and default gateway for e0M.

<node01-mgmt-ip> <node01-mgmt-mask> <node01-mgmt-gateway>

9.    Enter the URL where the software can be found.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This web server must be pingable.

<url-boot-software>

10.  Press Enter for the user name, indicating no user name.

11.  Enter y to set the newly installed software as the default to be used for subsequent reboots.

12.  Enter y to reboot the node.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          When installing new software, the system might perform firmware upgrades to the BIOS and adapter cards, causing reboots and possible stops at the Loader-A prompt. If these actions occur, the system might deviate from this procedure.

13.  Press Ctrl-C when the following message displays:

Press Ctrl-C for Boot Menu

14.  Select option 4 for Clean Configuration and Initialize All Disks.

15.  Enter y to zero disks, reset config, and install a new file system.

16.  Enter y to erase all the data on the disks.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The initialization and creation of the root aggregate can take 90 minutes or more to complete, depending on the number and type of disks attached. When initialization is complete, the storage system reboots. Note that SSDs take considerably less time to initialize. You can continue with the node 02 configuration while the disks for node 01 are zeroing.

**Configure Node 02**

To configure node 02, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to the storage system console port. You should see a Loader-A prompt. However, if the storage system is in a reboot loop, press Ctrl-C to exit the autoboot loop when the following message displays:

Starting AUTOBOOT press Ctrl-C to abort…

2.    Allow the system to boot up.

autoboot

3.    Press Ctrl-C when prompted.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          If ONTAP 9.1 is not the version of software being booted, continue with the following steps to install new software. If ONTAP 9.1 is the version being booted, select option 8 and y to reboot the node. Then continue with step 14.

4.    To install new software, select option 7.

5.    Enter y to perform an upgrade.

6.    Select e0M for the network port you want to use for the download.

7.    Enter y to reboot now.

8.    Enter the IP address, netmask, and default gateway for e0M.

<node02-mgmt-ip> <node02-mgmt-mask> <node02-mgmt-gateway>

9.    Enter the URL where the software can be found.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This web server must be pingable.

<url-boot-software>

10.  Press Enter for the user name, indicating no user name.

11.  Enter y to set the newly installed software as the default to be used for subsequent reboots.

12.  Enter y to reboot the node.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          When installing new software, the system might perform firmware upgrades to the BIOS and adapter cards, causing reboots and possible stops at the Loader-A prompt. If these actions occur, the system might deviate from this procedure.

13.  Press Ctrl-C when you see this message:

Press Ctrl-C for Boot Menu

14.  Select option 4 for Clean Configuration and Initialize All Disks.

15.  Enter y to zero disks, reset config, and install a new file system.

16.  Enter y to erase all the data on the disks.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The initialization and creation of the root aggregate can take 90 minutes or more to complete, depending on the number and type of disks attached. When initialization is complete, the storage system reboots. Note that SSDs take considerably less time to initialize.

**Set Up Node**

From a console port program attached to the storage controller A (node 01) console port, run the node setup script. This script appears when ONTAP 9.1 boots on the node for the first time.

1.    Follow the prompts to set up node 01:

Welcome to node setup.

You can enter the following commands at any time:

  "help" or "?" - if you want to have a question clarified,

  "back" - if you want to change previously answered questions, and

  "exit" or "quit" - if you want to quit the setup wizard.

     Any changes you made before quitting will be saved.

You can return to cluster setup at any time by typing “cluster setup”.

To accept a default or omit a question, do not enter a value.

This system will send event messages and weekly reports to NetApp Technical Support.

To disable this feature, enter "autosupport modify -support disable" within 24 hours.

Enabling AutoSupport can significantly speed problem determination and resolution should a problem occur on your system.

For further information on AutoSupport, see:

http://support.netapp.com/autosupport/

Type yes to confirm and continue {yes}: yes

Enter the node management interface port [e0M]: Enter

Enter the node management interface IP address: <node01-mgmt-ip>

Enter the node management interface netmask: <node01-mgmt-mask>

Enter the node management interface default gateway: <node01-mgmt-gateway>

A node management interface on port e0M with IP address <node01-mgmt-ip> has been created

Use your web browser to complete cluster setup by accesing https://<node01-mgmt-ip>

Otherwise press Enter to complete cluster setup using the command line interface:

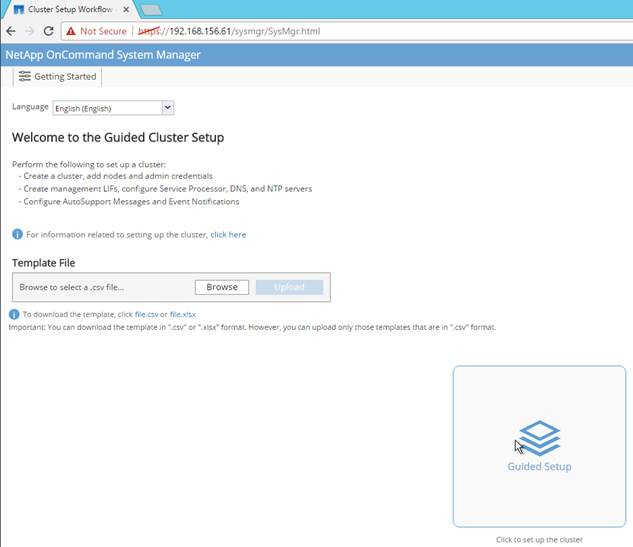
2.    To complete the cluster setup, open a web browser and navigate to https://<node01-mgmt-ip.

Table 5    Cluster create in ONTAP prerequisites

| Cluster Detail | Cluster Detail Value |
| --- | --- |
| Cluster name | <clustername> |
| ONTAP base license | <cluster-base-license-key> |
| Cluster management IP address | <clustermgmt-ip> |
| Cluster management netmask | <clustermgmt-mask> |
| Cluster management gateway | <clustermgmt-gateway> |
| Cluster node 01 IP address | <node01-mgmt-ip> |
| Cluster node 01 netmask | <node01-mgmt-mask> |
| Cluster node 01 gateway | <node01-mgmt-gateway> |
| Cluster node 02 IP address | <node02-mgmt-ip> |
| Cluster node 02 netmask | <node02-mgmt-mask> |
| Cluster node 02 gateway | <node02-mgmt-gateway> |
| Node 01 service processor IP address | <node01-SP-ip> |
| Node 02 service processor IP address | <node02-SP-ip> |
| DNS domain name | <dns-domain-name> |
| DNS server IP address | <dns-ip> |
| NTP server IP address | <ntp-ip> |

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Cluster setup can also be done using command line interface. This document describes the cluster setup using NetApp System Manager guided setup.

3.    Click Guided Setup on the Welcome screen.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_7.jpg)

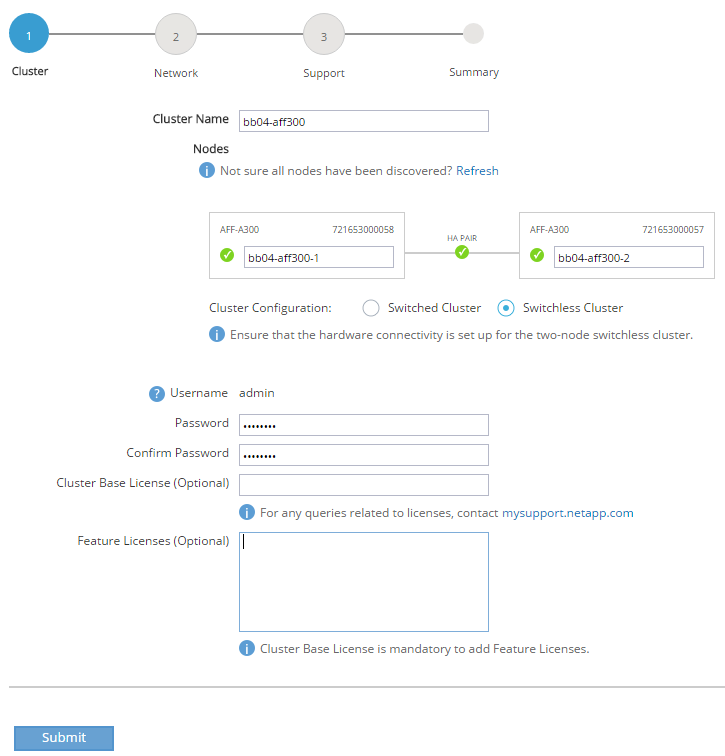
4.    In the Cluster screen, do the following:

         Enter the cluster and node names.

         Select the cluster configuration.

         Enter and confirm the password.

         (Optional) Enter the cluster base and feature licenses.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_8.png)

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The nodes are discovered automatically; if they are not, click the Refresh link. By default, the cluster interfaces will be created on all the new factory shipping storage controllers.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          If all the nodes are not discovered, then configure the cluster using the command line.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Cluster license and feature licenses can also be installed after completing the cluster creation.

5.    Click Submit.

6.    In the network page, complete the following sections:

         Cluster Management

o    Enter the IP address, netmask, gateway and port details.

         Node Management

o    Enter the node management IP addresses and port details for all the nodes.

         Service Processor Management

o    Enter the IP addresses for all the nodes.

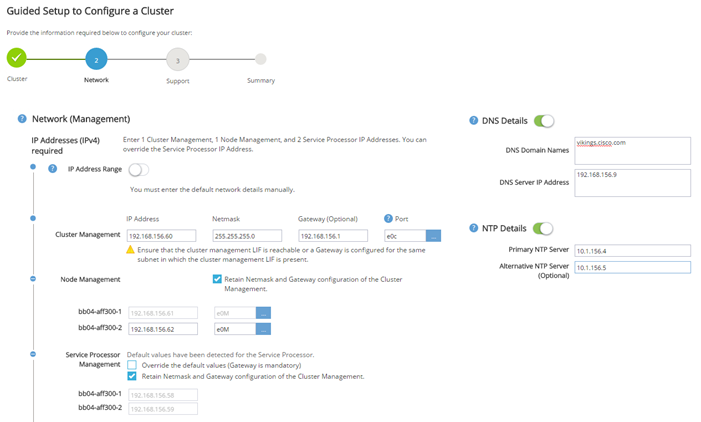
         DNS Details

o    Enter the DNS domain names and server address.

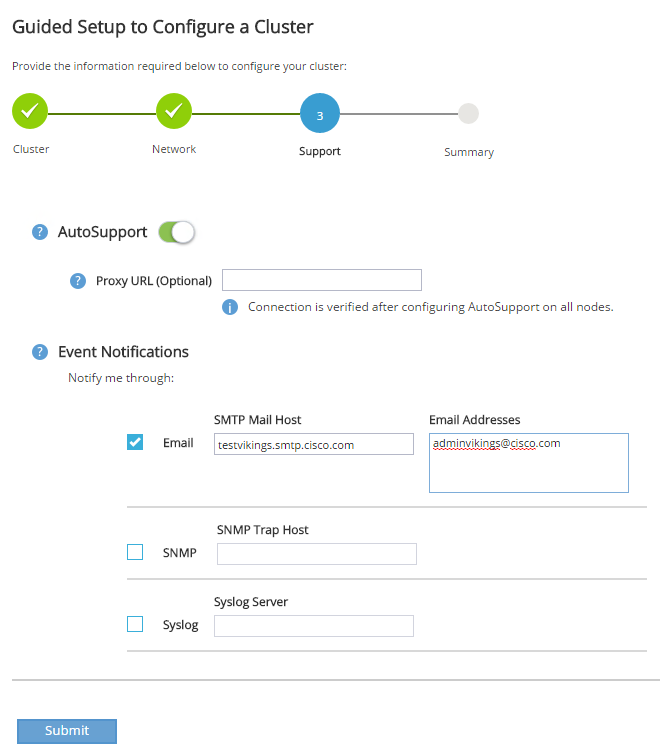
         NTP Details

o    Enter the primary and alternate NTP server.

7.    Click Submit.

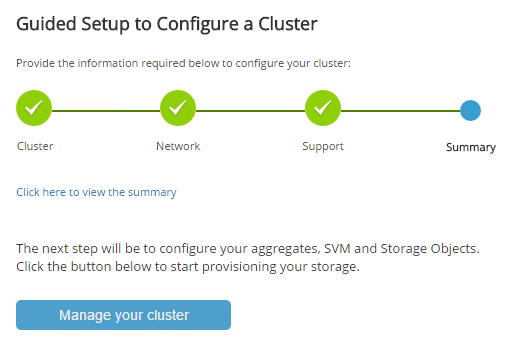
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_9.png)

8.    In the Support page, configure the AutoSupport and Event Notifications sections.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_10.png)

9.    Click Submit.

10.  In the Summary page, review the configuration details if needed.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_11.png)

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The node management interface can be on the same subnet as the cluster management interface, or it can be on a different subnet. In this document, we assume that it is on the same subnet.

**Login to the Cluster**

To log in to the cluster, complete the following steps:

1.    Open an SSH connection to either the cluster IP or host name.

2.    Log in to the admin user with the password you provided earlier.

**Zero All Spare Disks**

To zero all spare disks in the cluster, run the following command:

disk zerospares

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Advanced Data Partitioning creates a root partition and two data partitions on each SSD drive in an All Flash FAS configuration. Disk autoassign should have assigned one data partition to each node in an HA pair. If a different disk assignment is required, disk autoassignment must be disabled on both nodes in the HA pair by running the disk option modify command. Spare partitions can then be moved from one node to another by running the disk removeowner and disk assign commands.

**Set Onboard Unified Target Adapter 2 Port Personality**

To set the personality of the onboard unified target adapter 2 (UTA2), complete the following steps:

1.    Verify the Current Mode and Current Type properties of the ports by running the ucadmin show command:

ucadmin show

                       Current  Current    Pending  Pending    Admin

Node          Adapter  Mode     Type       Mode     Type       Status

------------  -------  -------  ---------  -------  ---------  -----------

<st-node01>

              0e       fc       target     -        -          online

<st-node01>

              0f       fc       target     -        -          online

<st-node01>

              0g       cna      target     -        -          online

<st-node01>

              0h       cna      target     -        -          online

<st-node02>

              0e       fc       target     -        -          online

<st-node02>

              0f       fc       target     -        -          online

<st-node02>

              0g       cna      target     -        -          online

<st-node02>

              0h       cna      target     -        -          online

8 entries were displayed.

2.    Verify that the Current Mode and Current Type properties for all ports are set properly. Set the ports used for FC connectivity to mode fc. The port type for all protocols should be set to target. Change the port personality by running the following command:

ucadmin modify -node <home-node-of-the-port> -adapter <port-name> -mode fc -type target

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The ports must be offline to run this command. To take an adapter offline, run the fcp adapter modify –node <home-node-of-the-port> -adapter <port-name> -state down command. Ports must be converted in pairs (for example, 0e and 0f).

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          After conversion, a reboot is required. After reboot, bring the ports online by running fcp adapter modify -node <home-node-of-the-port> -adapter <port-name> -state up.

**Set Auto-Revert on Cluster Management**

To set the auto-revert parameter on the cluster management interface, complete the following step:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          A storage virtual machine (SVM) is referred to as a Vserver (or vserver) in the GUI and CLI.

Run the following command:

network interface modify –vserver <clustername> -lif cluster\_mgmt –auto-revert true

**Set Up Management Broadcast Domain**

By default, all network ports are included in the default broadcast domain. Network ports used for data services (for example, e0d, e2a, and e2e) should be removed from the default broadcast domain, leaving just the management network ports (e0c and e0M). To perform this task, run the following commands:

broadcast-domain remove-ports  -broadcast-domain Default -ports bb04-affa300-1:e0d,bb04-affa300-1:e0g,bb04-affa300-1:e0h,bb04-affa300-1:e2a,bb04-affa300-1:e2e,bb04-affa300-2:e0d,bb04-affa300-2:e0g,bb04-affa300-2:e0h,bb04-affa300-2:e2a,bb04-affa300-2:e2e  
broadcast-domain show

**Set Up Service Processor Network Interface**

To assign a static IPv4 address to the service processor on each node, run the following commands:

system service-processor network modify –node <st-node01> -address-family IPv4 –enable true –dhcp none –ip-address <node01-sp-ip> -netmask <node01-sp-mask> -gateway <node01-sp-gateway>

system service-processor network modify –node <st-node02> -address-family IPv4 –enable true –dhcp none –ip-address <node02-sp-ip> -netmask <node02-sp-mask> -gateway <node02-sp-gateway>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The service processor IP addresses should be in the same subnet as the node management IP addresses.

**Create Aggregates**

An aggregate containing the root volume is created during the ONTAP setup process. To create additional aggregates, determine the aggregate name, the node on which to create it, and the number of disks it should contain.

To create new aggregates, complete the following steps:

1.    Run the following commands:

aggr create -aggregate aggr1\_node01 -node <st-node01> -diskcount <num-disks>

aggr create -aggregate aggr1\_node02 -node <st-node02> -diskcount <num-disks>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          You should have the minimum number of hot spare disks for hot spare disk partitions recommended for your aggregate.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For all flash aggregates, you should have a minimum of one hot spare disk or disk partition. For nonflash homogenous aggregates, you should have a minimum of two hot spare disks or disk partitions. For Flash Pool aggregates, you should have a minimum of two hot spare disks or disk partitions for each disk type.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Start with five disks initially; you can add disks to an aggregate when additional storage is required. In an AFF configuration with a small number of SSDs, you might want to create an aggregate with all but one remaining disk (spare) assigned to the controller.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The aggregate cannot be created until disk zeroing completes. Run the aggr show command to display aggregate creation status. Do not proceed until both aggr1\_node1 and aggr1\_node2 are online.

aggr show

aggr rename –aggregate aggr0 –newname <node01-rootaggrname>

**Verify Storage Failover**

To confirm that storage failover is enabled, run the following commands for a failover pair:

1.    Verify the status of the storage failover.

storage failover show

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Both <st-node01> and <st-node02> must be capable of performing a takeover. Continue with step 3 if the nodes are capable of performing a takeover.

2.    Enable failover on one of the two nodes.

storage failover modify -node <st-node01> -enabled true

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Enabling failover on one node enables it for both nodes.

3.    Verify the HA status for a two-node cluster.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This step is not applicable for clusters with more than two nodes.

cluster ha show

4.    Continue with step 6 if high availability is configured.

5.    Only enable HA mode for two-node clusters. Do not run this command for clusters with more than two nodes because it causes problems with failover.

cluster ha modify -configured true

Do you want to continue? {y|n}: y

6.    Verify that hardware assist is correctly configured and, if needed, modify the partner IP address.

storage failover hwassist show

storage failover modify –hwassist-partner-ip <node02-mgmt-ip> -node <st-node01>

storage failover modify –hwassist-partner-ip <node01-mgmt-ip> -node <st-node02>

**Disable Flow Control on 10GbE and 40GbE ports**

NetApp recommends disabling flow control on all the 10GbE and UTA2 ports that are connected to external devices. To disable flow control, complete the following steps:

1.    Run the following commands to configure node 01:

network port modify -node <st-node01> -port e0a,e0b,e0e,e0f,e0g,e0h,e2a,e2e -flowcontrol-admin none

Warning: Changing the network port settings will cause a several second interruption in carrier.

Do you want to continue? {y|n}: y

2.    Run the following commands to configure node 02:

network port modify -node <st-node02> -port e0a,e0b,e0e,e0f,e0g,e0h,e2a,e2e -flowcontrol-admin none

Warning: Changing the network port settings will cause a several second interruption in carrier.

Do you want to continue? {y|n}: y

network port show –fields flowcontrol-admin

**Disable Unused FCoE Capability on CNA Ports**

If the UTA2 port is set to CNA mode and is only expected to handle Ethernet data traffic (for example NFS), then the unused FCoE capability of the port should be disabled by setting the corresponding FCP adapter to state down with the fcp adapter modify command. Here are some examples:

fcp adapter modify -node <st-node01> -adapter 0g –status-admin down

fcp adapter modify -node <st-node01> -adapter 0h –status-admin down

fcp adapter modify -node <st-node02> -adapter 0g –status-admin down

fcp adapter modify -node <st-node02> -adapter 0h –status-admin down

fcp adapter show –fields status-admin

**Configure Network Time Protocol**

To configure time synchronization on the cluster, complete the following steps:

1.    Set the time zone for the cluster.

timezone <timezone>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For example, in the eastern United States, the time zone is America/New\_York.

2.    Set the date for the cluster.

date <ccyymmddhhmm.ss>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The format for the date is <[Century][Year][Month][Day][Hour][Minute].[Second]> (for example, 201703231549.30).

3.    Configure the Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers for the cluster.

cluster time-service ntp server create -server <switch-a-ntp-ip>

cluster time-service ntp server create -server <switch-b-ntp-ip>

**Configure Simple Network Management Protocol**

To configure the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), complete the following steps:

1.    Configure basic SNMP information, such as the location and contact. When polled, this information is visible as the sysLocation and sysContact variables in SNMP.

snmp contact <snmp-contact>

snmp location “<snmp-location>”

snmp init 1

options snmp.enable on

2.    Configure SNMP traps to send to remote hosts, such as a DFM server or another fault management system.

snmp traphost add <oncommand-um-server-fqdn>

**Configure SNMPv1 Access**

To configure SNMPv1 access, set the shared, secret plain-text password (called a community):

snmp community add ro <snmp-community>

**Configure AutoSupport**

NetApp AutoSupport® sends support summary information to NetApp through HTTPS. To configure AutoSupport, run the following command:

system node autosupport modify -node \* -state enable –mail-hosts <mailhost> -transport https -support enable -noteto <storage-admin-email>

**Enable Cisco Discovery Protocol**

To enable the Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) on the NetApp storage controllers, run the following command to enable CDP on ONTAP:

node run -node \* options cdpd.enable on

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          To be effective, CDP must also be enabled on directly connected networking equipment such as switches and routers.

**Create Jumbo Frame MTU Broadcast Domains in  ONTAP**

To create a data broadcast domain with an MTU of 9000, run the following commands to create a broadcast domain for NFS on ONTAP:

broadcast-domain create -broadcast-domain Infra\_NFS -mtu 9000

**Create Interface Groups**

To create the LACP interface groups for the 10GbE data interfaces, run the following commands:

ifgrp create -node <st-node01> -ifgrp a0a -distr-func port -mode multimode\_lacp  
ifgrp add-port -node <st-node01> -ifgrp a0a -port e2a  
ifgrp add-port -node <st-node01> -ifgrp a0a -port e2e  
  
ifgrp create -node <st-node02> -ifgrp a0a -distr-func port -mode multimode\_lacp  
ifgrp add-port -node <st-node02> -ifgrp a0a -port e2a  
ifgrp add-port -node <st-node02> -ifgrp a0a -port e2e

ifgrp show

**Create VLANs**

To create VLANs, create NFS VLAN ports and add them to the NFS broadcast domain:

network port modify –node <st-node01> -port a0a –mtu 9000  
network port modify –node <st-node02> -port a0a –mtu 9000

network port vlan create –node <st-node01> -vlan-name a0a-<infra-nfs-vlan-id>  
network port vlan create –node <st-node02> -vlan-name a0a-<infra-nfs-vlan-id>  
  
broadcast-domain add-ports -broadcast-domain Infra\_NFS -ports <st-node01>:a0a-<infra-nfs-vlan-id>, <st-node02>:a0a-<infra-nfs-vlan-id>

**Create Storage Virtual Machine**

To create an infrastructure SVM, complete the following steps:

1.    Run the vserver create command.

vserver create –vserver Infra-SVM –rootvolume rootvol –aggregate aggr1\_node01 –rootvolume-security-style unix

2.    Remove the unused data protocols from the SVM - CIFS, iSCSI, and NDMP.

vserver remove-protocols –vserver Infra-SVM -protocols iscsi,cifs,ndmp

3.    Add the two data aggregates to the Infra-SVM aggregate list for the NetApp VSC.

vserver modify –vserver Infra-SVM –aggr-list aggr1\_node01,aggr1\_node02

4.    Enable and run the NFS protocol in the Infra-SVM.

nfs create -vserver Infra-SVM -udp disabled

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          If NFS license is not installed during the cluster configuration, make sure install the license for staring the NFS service.

5.    Turn on the SVM vstorage parameter for the NetApp NFS VAAI plug-in.

vserver nfs modify –vserver Infra-SVM –vstorage enabled

vserver nfs show

**Create Load-Sharing Mirrors of SVM Root Volume**

To create a load-sharing mirror of an SVM root volume, complete the following steps:

1.    Create a volume to be the load-sharing mirror of the infrastructure SVM root volume on each node.

volume create –vserver Infra-SVM –volume rootvol\_m01 –aggregate aggr1\_node01 –size 1GB –type DP   
volume create –vserver Infra-SVM –volume rootvol\_m02 –aggregate aggr1\_node02 –size 1GB –type DP

2.    Create a job schedule to update the root volume mirror relationships every 15 minutes.

job schedule interval create -name 15min -minutes 15

3.    Create the mirroring relationships.

snapmirror create –source-path Infra-SVM:rootvol –destination-path Infra-SVM:rootvol\_m01 –type LS -schedule 15min

snapmirror create –source-path Infra-SVM:rootvol –destination-path Infra-SVM:rootvol\_m02 –type LS -schedule 15min

4.    Initialize the mirroring relationship.

snapmirror initialize-ls-set –source-path Infra-SVM:rootvol  
snapmirror show

**Create Block Protocol (FC) Service**

Run the following command to create the FCP service on each SVM. This command also starts the FCP service and sets the WWN for the SVM.

fcp create -vserver Infra-SVM  
fcp show

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          If FC license is not installed during the cluster configuration, make sure install the license for creating FC service

**Configure HTTPS Access**

To configure secure access to the storage controller, complete the following steps:

1.    Increase the privilege level to access the certificate commands.

set -privilege diag

Do you want to continue? {y|n}: y

2.    Generally, a self-signed certificate is already in place. Verify the certificate and obtain parameters (for example, <serial-number>) by running the following command:

security certificate show

For each SVM shown, the certificate common name should match the DNS FQDN of the SVM. Delete the two default certificates and replace them with either self-signed certificates or certificates from a certificate authority (CA). To delete the default certificates, run the following commands:

security certificate delete -vserver Infra-SVM -common-name Infra-SVM -ca Infra-SVM -type server -serial <serial-number>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Deleting expired certificates before creating new certificates is a best practice. Run the security certificate delete command to delete the expired certificates. In the following command, use TAB completion to select and delete each default certificate.

3.    To generate and install self-signed certificates, run the following commands as one-time commands. Generate a server certificate for the Infra-SVM and the cluster SVM. Use TAB completion to aid in the completion of these commands.

security certificate create -common-name <cert-common-name> -type  server -size 2048 -country <cert-country> -state <cert-state> -locality <cert-locality> -organization <cert-org> -unit <cert-unit> -email-addr <cert-email> -expire-days <cert-days> -protocol SSL -hash-function SHA256 -vserver Infra-SVM

4.    To obtain the values for the parameters required in step 5 (<cert-ca> and <cert-serial>), run the security certificate show command.

5.    Enable each certificate that was just created by using the –server-enabled true and –client-enabled false parameters. Use TAB completion to aid in the completion of these commands.

security ssl modify -vserver <clustername> -server-enabled true -client-enabled false -ca <cert-ca> -serial <cert-serial> -common-name <cert-common-name>

6.    Disable HTTP cluster management access.

system services firewall policy delete -policy mgmt -service http –vserver <clustername>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          It is normal for some of these commands to return an error message stating that the entry does not exist.

7.    Change back to the normal admin privilege level and set up the system to allow SVM logs to be available by web.

set –privilege admin

vserver services web modify –name spi|ontapi|compat –vserver \* -enabled true

**Configure NFSv3**

To configure NFSv3 on the SVM, complete the following steps:

1.    Create a new rule for the infrastructure NFS subnet in the default export policy.

vserver export-policy rule create –vserver Infra-SVM -policyname default –ruleindex 1 –protocol nfs -clientmatch <infra-nfs-subnet-cidr> -rorule sys –rwrule sys -superuser sys –allow-suid false

2.    Assign the FlexPod export policy to the infrastructure SVM root volume.

volume modify –vserver Infra-SVM –volume rootvol –policy default

**Create FlexVol Volumes**

The following information is required to create a NetApp FlexVol® volume:

         The volume name

         The volume size

         The aggregate on which the volume exists

To create a FlexVol volume, run the following commands:

volume create -vserver Infra-SVM -volume infra\_datastore\_1 -aggregate aggr1\_node01 -size 500GB -state online -policy default -junction-path /infra\_datastore\_1 -space-guarantee none -percent-snapshot-space 0

volume create -vserver Infra-SVM -volume infra\_datastore\_2 -aggregate aggr1\_node02 -size 500GB -state online -policy default -junction-path /infra\_datastore\_2 -space-guarantee none -percent-snapshot-space 0

volume create -vserver Infra-SVM -volume esxi\_boot -aggregate aggr1\_node01 -size 100GB -state online -policy default -space-guarantee none -percent-snapshot-space 0

snapmirror update-ls-set -source-path Infra-SVM:rootvol

**Create Boot LUNs**

To create two boot LUNs, run the following commands:

lun create -vserver Infra-SVM -volume esxi\_boot -lun VM-Host-Infra-01 -size 15GB -ostype vmware -space-reserve disabled   
lun create -vserver Infra-SVM -volume esxi\_boot -lun VM-Host-Infra-02 -size 15GB -ostype vmware -space-reserve disabled

**Schedule Deduplication**

On NetApp All Flash FAS systems, deduplication is enabled by default. To schedule deduplication, complete the following step:

1.    After the volumes are created, assign a once-a-day deduplication schedule to esxi\_boot, infra\_datastore\_1 and infra\_datastore\_2:

efficiency modify –vserver Infra-SVM –volume esxi\_boot –schedule sun-sat@0

efficiency modify –vserver Infra-SVM –volume infra\_datastore\_1 –schedule sun-sat@0

efficiency modify –vserver Infra-SVM –volume infra\_datastore\_2 –schedule sun-sat@0

**Create FC LIFs**

Run the following commands to create four FC LIFs (two on each node):

network interface create -vserver Infra-SVM -lif fcp\_lif01a -role data -data-protocol fcp -home-node <st-node01> -home-port 0e –status-admin up

network interface create -vserver Infra-SVM -lif fcp\_lif01b -role data -data-protocol fcp -home-node <st-node01> -home-port 0f –status-admin up

network interface create -vserver Infra-SVM -lif fcp\_lif02a -role data -data-protocol fcp -home-node <st-node02> -home-port 0e –status-admin up

network interface create -vserver Infra-SVM -lif fcp\_lif02b -role data -data-protocol fcp -home-node <st-node02> -home-port 0f –status-admin up

network interface show

**Create NFS LIF**

To create an NFS LIF, run the following commands:

network interface create -vserver Infra-SVM -lif nfs\_lif01 -role data -data-protocol nfs -home-node <st-node01> -home-port a0a-<infra-nfs-vlan-id> –address <node01-nfs\_lif01-ip> -netmask <node01-nfs\_lif01-mask> -status-admin up –failover-policy broadcast-domain-wide –firewall-policy data –auto-revert true

network interface create -vserver Infra-SVM -lif nfs\_lif02 -role data -data-protocol nfs -home-node <st-node02> -home-port a0a-<infra-nfs-vlan-id> –address <node02-nfs\_lif02-ip> -netmask <node02-nfs\_lif02-mask>> -status-admin up –failover-policy broadcast-domain-wide –firewall-policy data –auto-revert true

network interface show

**Add Infrastructure SVM Administrator**

To add the infrastructure SVM administrator and SVM administration LIF in the out-of-band management network, complete the following steps:

1.    Run the following commands:

network interface create –vserver Infra-SVM –lif svm-mgmt –role data –data-protocol none –home-node <st-node02> -home-port  e0c –address <svm-mgmt-ip> -netmask <svm-mgmt-mask> -status-admin up –failover-policy broadcast-domain-wide –firewall-policy mgmt –auto-revert true

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The SVM management IP in this step should be in the same subnet as the storage cluster management IP.

2.    Create a default route to allow the SVM management interface to reach the outside world.

network route create –vserver Infra-SVM -destination 0.0.0.0/0 –gateway <svm-mgmt-gateway>

network route show

3.    Set a password for the SVM vsadmin user and unlock the user.

security login password –username vsadmin –vserver Infra-SVM  
Enter a new password:  <password>  
Enter it again:  <password>

security login unlock –username vsadmin –vserver Infra-SVM

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          A cluster serves data through at least one and possibly several SVMs. We have just gone through creating a single SVM. If you would like to configure your environment with multiple SVMs, this is a good time to create additional SVMs.

**Server Configuration**

**Cisco UCS Base Configuration**

This FlexPod deployment will show configuration steps for the Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnects (FI) in a design that will support Fibre Channel to the NetApp AFF through the Cisco Nexus.

**Perform Initial Setup of Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnects for FlexPod Environments**

This section provides detailed procedures for configuring the Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS) for use in a FlexPod environment. The steps are necessary to provision the Cisco UCS B-Series and C-Series servers and should be followed precisely to avoid improper configuration.

**Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect A**

To configure the Cisco UCS for use in a FlexPod environment, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to the console port on the first Cisco UCS fabric interconnect.

Enter the configuration method: gui

Physical switch Mgmt0 IP address: <ucsa-mgmt-ip>

Physical switch Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: <ucsa-mgmt-mask>

IPv4 address of the default gateway: <ucsa-mgmt-gateway>

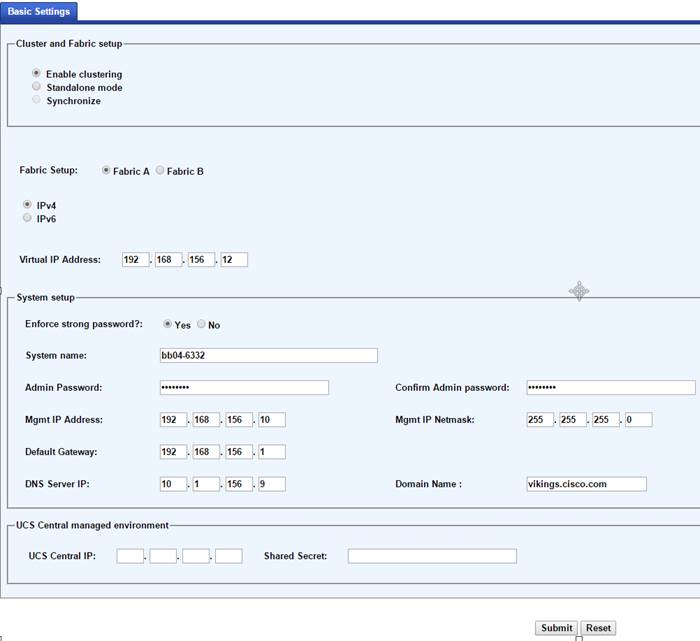
2.    Using a supported web browser, connect to https://<ucsa-mgmt-ip>, accept the security prompts, and click the ‘Express Setup’ link under HTML.

3.    Select Initial Setup and click Submit.

4.    Select Enable clustering, Fabric A, and IPv4.

5.    Fill in the Virtual IP Address with the UCS cluster IP.

6.    Completely fill in the System setup section.  For system name, use the overall UCS system name. For the Mgmt IP Address, use <ucsa-mgmt-ip>.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_12.jpg)

7.    Click Submit.

**Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect B**

To configure the Cisco UCS for use in a FlexPod environment, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to the console port on the second Cisco UCS fabric interconnect.

Enter the configuration method: gui

Physical switch Mgmt0 IP address: <ucsb-mgmt-ip>

Physical switch Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: <ucsb-mgmt-mask>

IPv4 address of the default gateway: <ucsb-mgmt-gateway>

2.    Using a supported web browser, connect to https://<ucsb-mgmt-ip>, accept the security prompts, and click the ‘Express Setup’ link under HTML.

3.    Under System setup, enter the Admin Password entered above and click Submit.

4.    Enter <ucsb-mgmt-ip> for the Mgmt IP Address and click Submit.

**Cisco UCS Setup**

**Log in to Cisco UCS Manager**

To log in to the Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS) environment, complete the following steps:

1.    Open a web browser and navigate to the Cisco UCS fabric interconnect cluster address.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          You may need to wait at least 5 minutes after configuring the second fabric interconnect for UCS Manager to come up.

2.    Click the Launch UCS Manager link under HTML to launch Cisco UCS Manager.

3.    If prompted to accept security certificates, accept as necessary.

4.    When prompted, enter admin as the user name and enter the administrative password.

5.    Click Login to log in to Cisco UCS Manager.

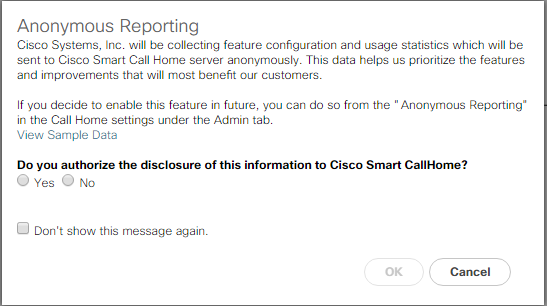
**Upgrade Cisco UCS Manager Software to Version 3.1(2f)**

This document assumes the use of Cisco UCS 3.1(2f). To upgrade the Cisco UCS Manager software and the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect software to version 3.1(2f), refer to [Cisco UCS Manager Install and Upgrade Guides](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10281/prod_installation_guides_list.html).

**Anonymous Reporting**

To create anonymous reporting, complete the following step:

1.    In the Anonymous Reporting window, select whether to send anonymous data to Cisco for improving future products. If you select Yes, enter the IP address of your SMTP Server.  Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_13.png)

**Configure Cisco UCS Call Home**

It is highly recommended by Cisco to configure Call Home in Cisco UCS Manager.  Configuring Call Home will accelerate resolution of support cases.  To configure Call Home, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Admin on the left.

2.    Select All > Communication Management > Call Home.

3.    Change the State to On.

4.    Fill in all the fields according to your Management preferences and click Save Changes and OK to complete configuring Call Home.

**Configure Unified Ports**

Fiber Channel port configurations differ slightly between the 6332-16UP and the 6248UP Fabric Interconnects.  Both Fabric Interconnects have a slider mechanism within the Cisco UCS Manager GUI interface, but the fiber channel port selection options for the 6332-16UP are from the first 16 ports starting from the first port on the left, and configured in increments of the first 6, 12, or all 16 of the unified ports.  With the 6248UP, the port selection options will start from the right of the 32 fixed ports, or the right of the 16 ports of the expansion module, going down in contiguous increments of 2.

To enable the fiber channel ports, complete the following steps for the 6332-16UP:

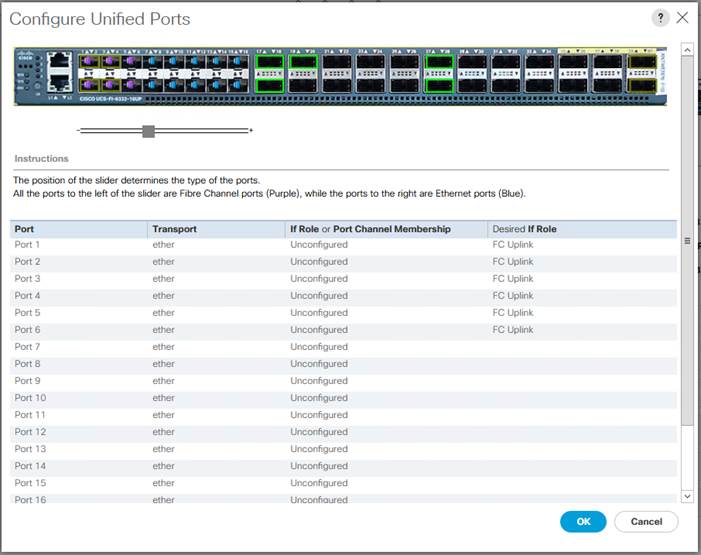
1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left.

2.    Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary).

3.    Select Configure Unified Ports.

4.    Click Yes on the pop-up window warning that changes to the fixed module will require a reboot of the fabric interconnect and changes to the expansion module will require a reboot of that module.

5.    Within the Configured Fixed Ports pop-up window move the gray slider bar from the left to the right to select either 6, 12, or 16 ports to be set as FC Uplinks.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_14.jpg)

6.    Click OK, then click Yes, then click OK to continue

7.    Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect B (primary).

8.    Select Configure Unified Ports.

9.    Click Yes on the pop-up window warning that changes to the fixed module will require a reboot of the fabric interconnect and changes to the expansion module will require a reboot of that module.

10.  Within the Configured Fixed Ports pop-up window move the gray slider bar from the left to the right to select either 6, 12, or 16 ports to be set as FC Uplinks.

11.  Click OK, then Yes, then OK to continue.

12.  Wait for both Fabric Interconnects to reboot.

13.  Log back into Cisco UCS Manager.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This process will be similar for the Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnect, but will be in increments of two unified ports that can be converted to FC uplinks, and will slide from the right to the left instead of the left to the right process used with the Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnects.

**Add Block of IP Addresses for KVM Access**

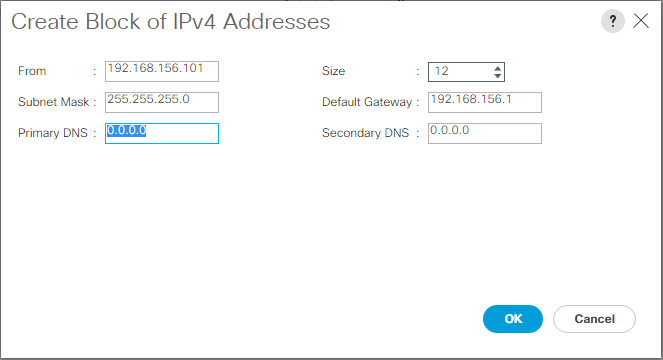
To create a block of IP addresses for in band server Keyboard, Video, Mouse (KVM) access in the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Expand Pools > root > IP Pools.

3.    Right-click IP Pool ext-mgmt and select Create Block of IPv4 Addresses.

4.    Enter the starting IP address of the block, number of IP addresses required, and the subnet mask and gateway information.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_15.png)

5.    Click OK to create the block.

6.    Click OK in the confirmation message.

**Synchronize Cisco UCS to NTP**

To synchronize the Cisco UCS environment to the NTP servers in the Nexus switches, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Admin on the left.

2.    Expand All > Time Zone Management.

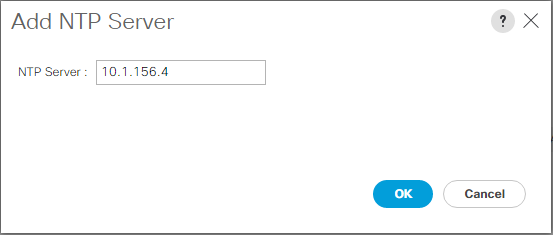
3.    Select Timezone.

4.    In the Properties pane, select the appropriate time zone in the Timezone menu.

5.    Click Save Changes, and then click OK.

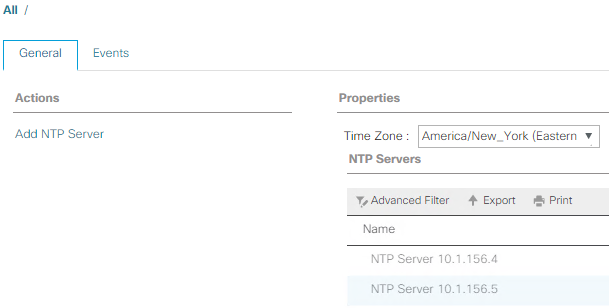
6.    Click Add NTP Server.

7.    Enter <switch-a-ntp-ip> and click OK. Click OK on the confirmation.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_16.png)

8.    Click Add NTP Server.

9.    Enter <switch-b-ntp-ip> and click OK. Click OK on the confirmation.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_17.png)

**Edit Chassis Discovery Policy**

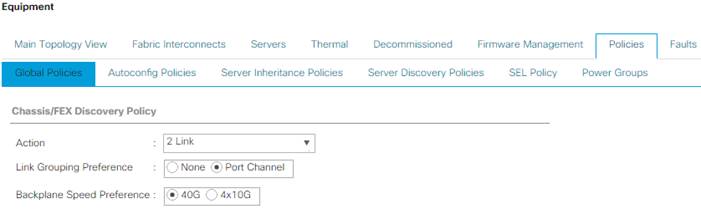
Setting the discovery policy simplifies the addition of Cisco UCS B-Series chassis and of additional fabric extenders for further Cisco UCS C-Series connectivity. To modify the chassis discovery policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left and select Equipment in the second list.

2.    In the right pane, click the Policies tab.

3.    Under Global Policies, set the Chassis/FEX Discovery Policy to match the minimum number of uplink ports that are cabled between the chassis or fabric extenders (FEXes) and the fabric interconnects.

4.    Set the Link Grouping Preference to Port Channel. If Backplane Speed Preference appears, leave it set at 40G.  If the environment being setup contains a large amount of multicast traffic, set the Multicast Hardware Hash setting to Enabled.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_18.jpg)

5.    Click Save Changes.

6.    Click OK.

**Enable Server and Uplink Ports**

To enable server and uplink ports, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left.

2.    Expand Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary) > Fixed Module.

3.    Expand Ethernet Ports.

4.    Select the ports that are connected to the chassis, Cisco FEX, and direct connect Cisco UCS C-Series servers, right-click them, and select “Configure as Server Port.”

5.    Click Yes to confirm server ports and click OK.

6.    Verify that the ports connected to the chassis, C-series servers and Cisco FEX are now configured as server ports.

7.    Select the ports that are connected to the Cisco Nexus switches, right-click them, and select Configure as Uplink Port.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          **The** last 6 ports of the UCS 6332 and UCS 6332-16UP FIs will only work with optical based QSFP transceivers and AOC cables, so they can be better utilized as uplinks to upstream resources that might be optical only.

8.    Click Yes to confirm uplink ports and click OK.

9.    Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect B (subordinate) > Fixed Module.

10.  Expand Ethernet Ports.

11.  Select the ports that are connected to the chassis, C-series servers or to the Cisco 2232 FEX (two per FEX), right-click them, and select Configure as Server Port.

12.  Click Yes to confirm server ports and click OK.

13.  Select the ports that are connected to the Cisco Nexus switches, right-click them, and select Configure as Uplink Port.

14.  Click Yes to confirm the uplink ports and click OK.

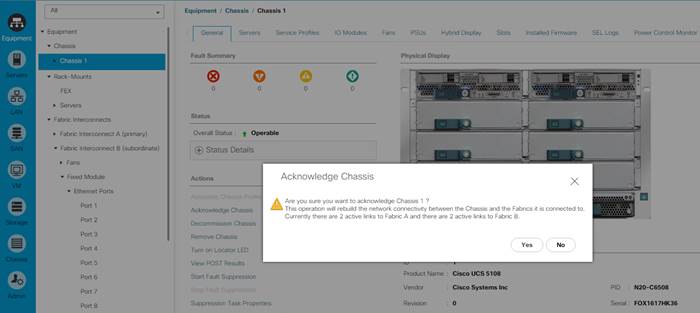
**Acknowledge Cisco UCS Chassis and FEX**

To acknowledge all Cisco UCS chassis and any external 2232 FEX modules, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left.

2.    Expand Chassis and select each chassis that is listed.

3.    Right-click each chassis and select Acknowledge Chassis.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_19.jpg)

4.    Click Yes and then click OK to complete acknowledging the chassis.

5.    If Nexus 2232 FEX are part of the configuration, expand Rack Mounts and FEX.

6.    Right-click each FEX that is listed and select Acknowledge FEX.

7.    Click Yes and then click OK to complete acknowledging the FEX.

**Create Uplink Port Channels to Cisco Nexus Switches**

To configure the necessary port channels out of the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this procedure, two port channels are created: one from fabric A to both Cisco Nexus switches and one from fabric B to both Cisco Nexus switches.

2.    Under LAN > LAN Cloud, expand the Fabric A tree.

3.    Right-click Port Channels.

4.    Select Create Port Channel.

5.    Enter 125 as the unique ID of the port channel.

6.    Enter vPC-125-Nexus as the name of the port channel.

7.    Click Next.

8.    Select the ports connected to the Nexus switches to be added to the port channel:

9.    Click >> to add the ports to the port channel.

10.  Click Finish to create the port channel.

11.  Click OK.

12.  In the navigation pane, under LAN > LAN Cloud, expand the fabric B tree.

13.  Right-click Port Channels.

14.  Select Create Port Channel.

15.  Enter 126 as the unique ID of the port channel.

16.  Enter vPC-126-Nexus as the name of the port channel.

17.  Click Next.

18.  Select the ports connected to the Nexus switches to be added to the port channel:

19.  Click >> to add the ports to the port channel.

20.  Click Finish to create the port channel.

21.  Click OK.

**Create a WWNN Pool for FC Boot**

To configure the necessary WWNN pool for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps on Cisco UCS Manager.

1.    Select SAN on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

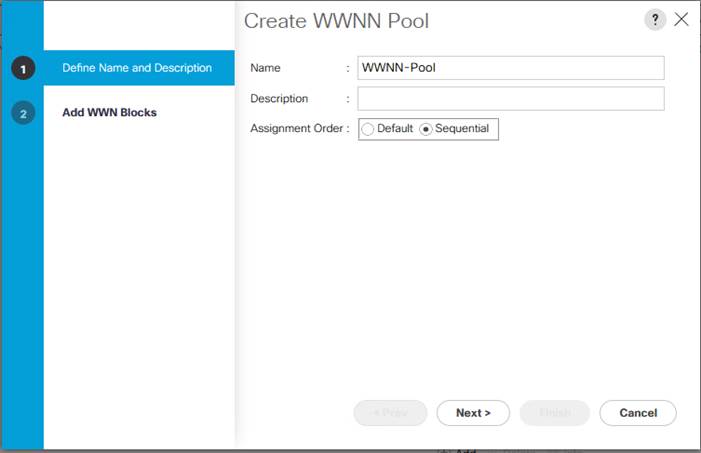
3.    Right-click WWNN Pools under the root organization.

4.    Select Create WWNN Pool to create the WWNN pool.

5.    Enter WWNN-Pool for the name of the WWNN pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the WWNN pool.

7.    Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_20.jpg)

8.    Click Next.

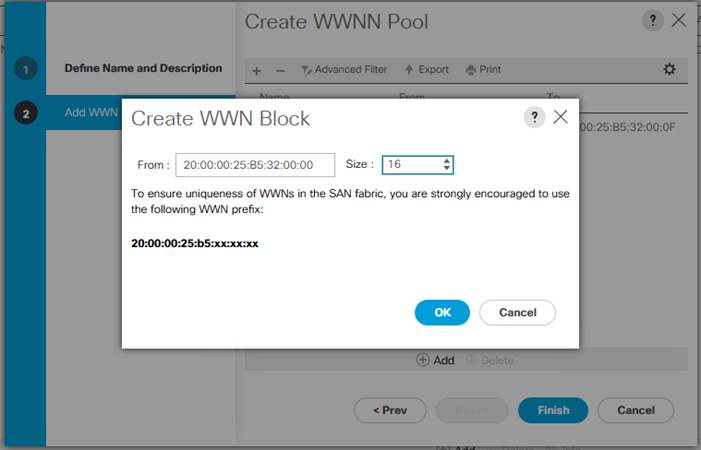
9.    Click Add.

10.  Modify the From field as necessary for the UCS Environment

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Modifications of the WWNN block, as well as the WWPN and MAC Addresses, can convey identifying information for the Cisco UCS domain.  Within the From field in our example, the 6th octet was changed from 00 to 32 to represent as identifying information for this being in the Cisco UCS 6332 in the 4th cabinet.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          When there are multiple UCS domains sitting in adjacency, it is important that these blocks; the WWNN, WWPN, and MAC, hold differing values between each set.

11.  Specify a size of the WWNN block sufficient to support the available server resources.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_21.jpg)

12.  Click OK.

13.  Click Finish and OK to complete creating the WWNN pool.

**Create WWPN Pools**

To configure the necessary WWPN pools for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

3.    In this procedure, two WWPN pools are created, one for each switching fabric.

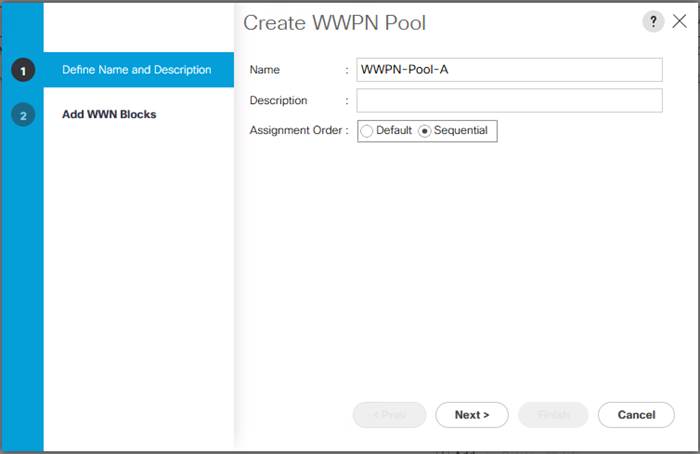
4.    Right-click WWPN Pools under the root organization.

5.    Select Create WWPN Pool to create the WWPN pool.

6.    Enter WWPN-Pool-A as the name of the WWPN pool.

7.    Optional: Enter a description for the WWPN pool.

8.    Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_22.jpg)

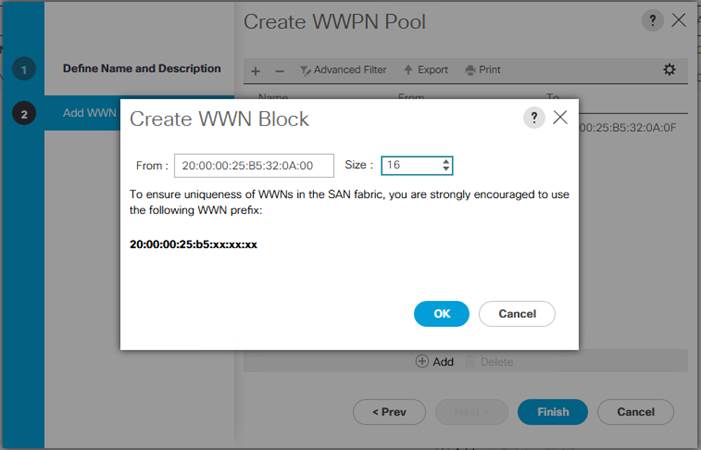
9.    Click Next.

10.  Click Add.

11.  Specify a starting WWPN

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, the recommendation is to place 0A in the next-to-last octet of the starting WWPN to identify all of the WWPNs as fabric A addresses.  Merging this with the pattern we used for the WWNN we see a WWPN block starting with 20:00:00:25:B5:32:0A:00

12.  Specify a size for the WWPN pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_23.jpg)

13.  Click OK.

14.  Click Finish.

15.  In the confirmation message, click OK.

16.  Right-click WWPN Pools under the root organization.

17.  Select Create WWPN Pool to create the WWPN pool.

18.  Enter WWPN-Pool-B as the name of the WWPN pool.

19.  Optional: Enter a description for the WWPN pool.

20.  Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

21.  Click Next.

22.  Click Add.

23.  Specify a starting WWPN.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, the recommendation is to place 0B in the next-to-last octet of the starting WWPN to identify all of the WWPNs as fabric A addresses.  Merging this with the pattern we used for the WWNN we see a WWPN block starting with 20:00:00:25:B5:32:0B:00.

24.  Specify a size for the WWPN address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

25.  Click OK.

26.  Click Finish.

27.  In the confirmation message, click OK

**Create VSAN**

To configure the necessary virtual storage area networks (VSANs) for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click the SAN on the left.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)           In this procedure, two VSANs are created.

2.    Select SAN > SAN Cloud.

3.    Right-click VSANs.

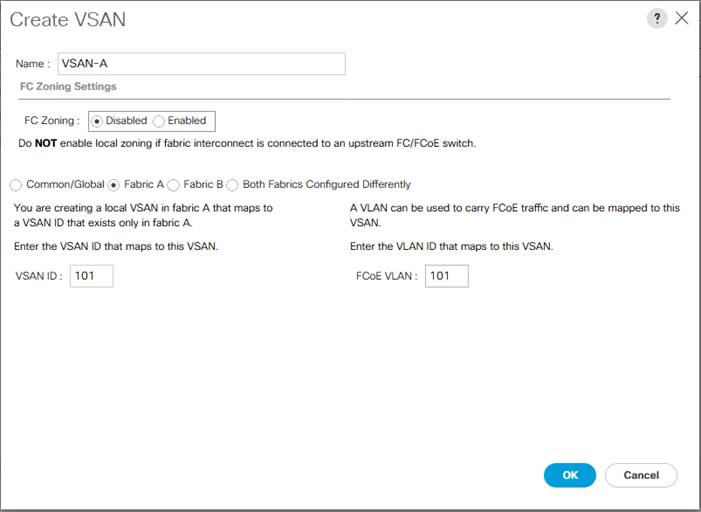
4.    Select Create VSAN.

5.    Enter VSAN-A as the name of the VSAN to be used for Fabric A

6.    Leave FC Zoning set at Disabled.

7.    Select Fabric A.

8.    Enter a unique VSAN ID and a corresponding FCoE VLAN ID that matches the configuration in the MDS switch for Fabric A.  It is recommended to use the same ID for both parameters and to use something other than 1.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_24.jpg)

9.    Click OK and then click OK again.

10.  Under SAN Cloud, right-click VSANs.

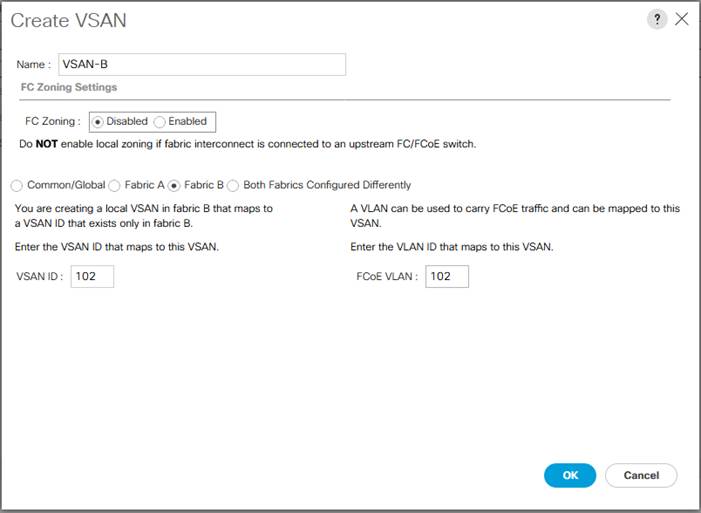
11.  Select Create VSAN.

12.  Enter VSAN-B as the name of the VSAN to be used for Fabric B.

13.  Leave FC Zoning set at Disabled.

14.  Select Fabric B.

15.  Enter a unique VSAN ID and a corresponding FCoE VLAN ID that matches the configuration in the MDS switch for Fabric B.  It is recommended use the same ID for both parameters and to use something other than 1.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_25.jpg)

16.  Click OK and then click OK again.

**Create FC Uplink Port Channels**

To create the FC Uplink Port Channels and assign the appropriate VSANs to them for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select SAN > SAN Cloud.

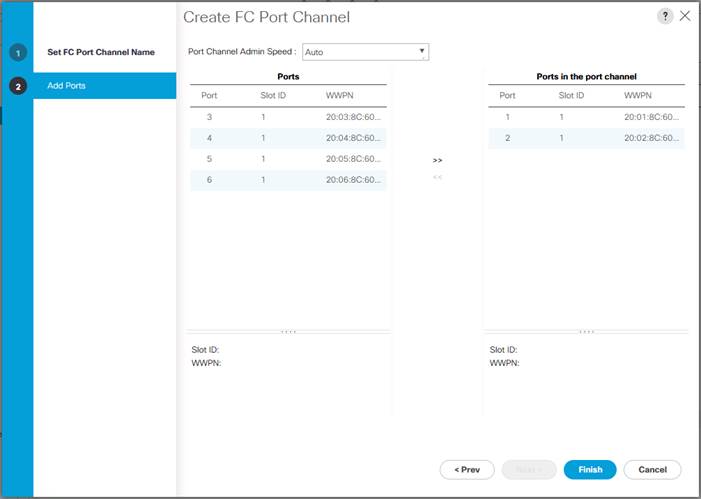
3.    Expand Fabric A and select FC Port Channels.

4.    Right-click FC Port Channels and select Create FC Port Channel.

5.    Set a unique ID for the port channel and provide a unique name for the port channel.

6.    Click Next.

7.    Select the ports connected to Cisco MDS A and use >> to add them to the port channel

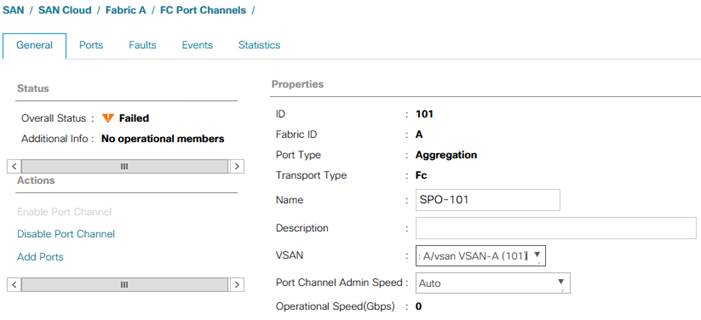
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_26.jpg)

8.    Click Finish to complete creating the port channel.

9.    Click OK the confirmation.

10.  Under FC Port-Channels, select the newly created port channel.

11.  In the right pane, use the pulldown to select VSAN-A.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_27.jpg)

12.  Click Save Changes to assign the VSAN.

13.  Click OK.

14.  Expand Fabric B and select FC Port Channels.

15.  Right-click FC Port Channels and select Create FC Port Channel.

16.  Set a unique ID for the port channel and provide a unique name for the port channel.

17.  Click Next.

18.  Select the ports connected to Cisco MDS B and use >> to add them to the port channel.

19.  Click Finish to complete creating the port channel.

20.  Click OK on the confirmation.

21.  Under FC Port-Channels, select the newly created port channel.

22.  In the right pane, use the pulldown to select VSAN-B.

23.  Click Save Changes to assign the VSAN.

24.  Click OK.

**Create vHBA Templates**

To create the necessary virtual host bus adapter (vHBA) templates for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vHBA Templates.

4.    Select Create vHBA Template.

5.    Enter vHBA-Template-A as the vHBA template name.

6.    Keep Fabric A selected.

7.    Leave Redundancy Type set to No Redundancy.

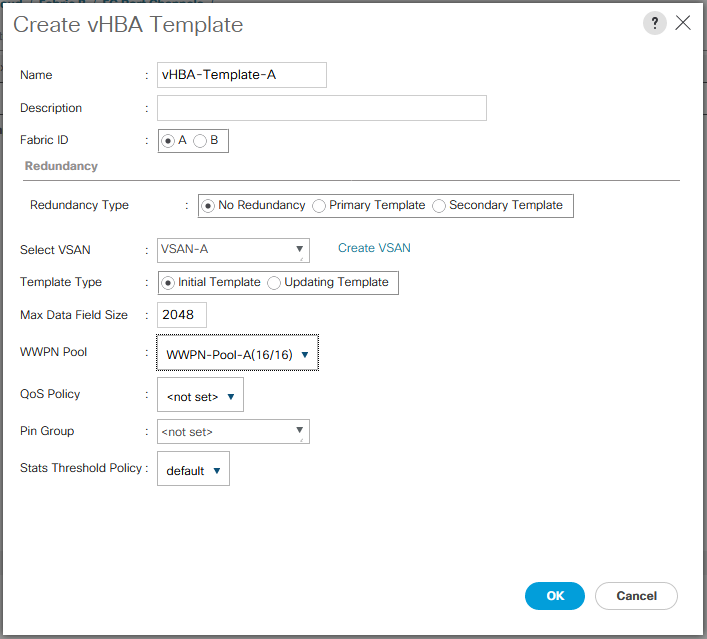
8.    Select VSAN-A.

9.    Leave Initial Template as the Template Type.

10.   Select WWPN-Pool-A as the WWPN Pool.

11.   Click OK to create the vHBA template.

12.   Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_28.png)

13.  Right-click vHBA Templates.

14.  Select Create vHBA Template.

15.  Enter vHBA-Template-B as the vHBA template name.

16.  Leave Redundancy Type set to No Redundancy.

17.  Select Fabric B as the Fabric ID.

18.  Select VSAN-B.

19.  Leave Initial Template as the Template Type.

20.  Select WWPN-Pool-B as the WWPN Pool.

21.  Click OK to create the vHBA template.

22.  Click OK.

**Create SAN Connectivity Policy**

To configure the necessary Infrastructure SAN Connectivity Policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select SAN > Policies > root.

3.    Right-click SAN Connectivity Policies.

4.    Select Create SAN Connectivity Policy.

5.    Enter FC-Boot as the name of the policy.

6.    Select the previously created WWNN-Pool for the WWNN Assignment.

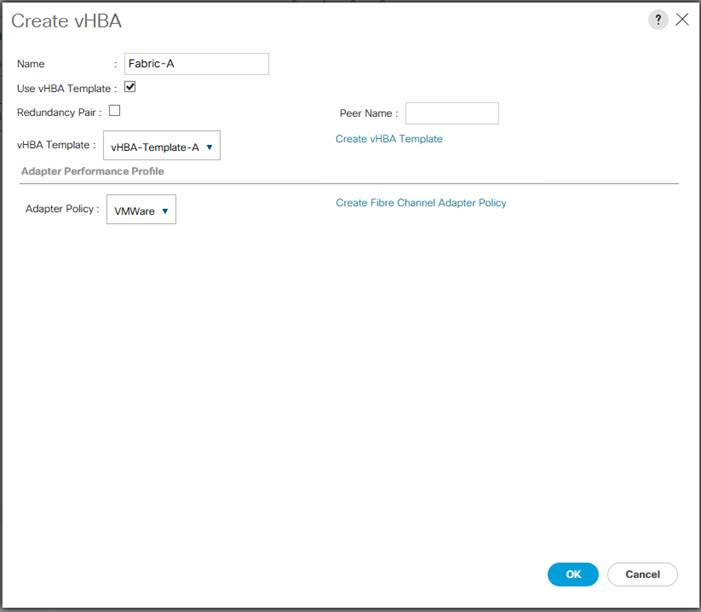
7.    Click the Add button at the bottom to add a vHBA.

8.    In the Create vHBA dialog box, enter Fabric-A as the name of the vHBA.

9.    Select the Use vHBA Template checkbox.

10.   In the vHBA Template list, select vHBA-Template-A.

11.   In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_29.jpg)

12.  Click OK.

13.  Click the Add button at the bottom to add a second vHBA.

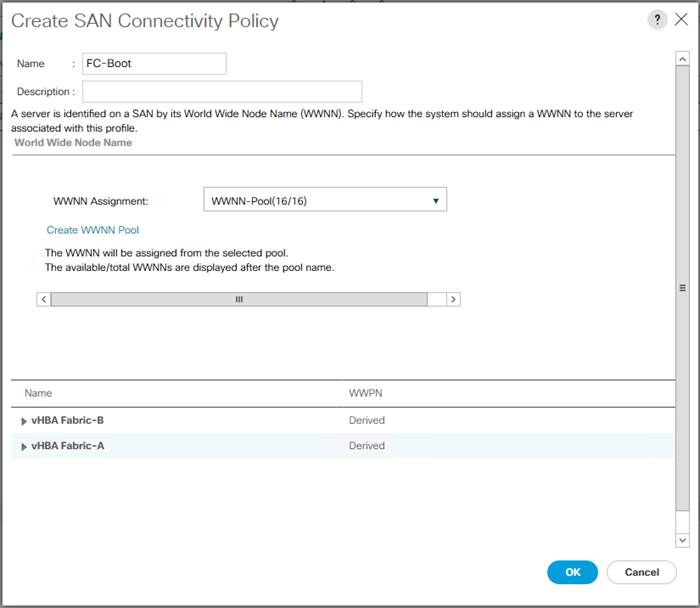
14.  In the Create vHBA dialog box, enter Fabric-B as the name of the vHBA.

15.  Select the Use vHBA Template checkbox.

16.  In the vHBA Template list, select vHBA-Template-B.

17.  In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

18.  Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_30.jpg)

19.  Click OK to create the SAN Connectivity Policy.

20.  Click OK to confirm creation.

**Create MAC Address Pools**

To configure the necessary MAC address pools for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this procedure, two MAC address pools are created, one for each switching fabric.

3.    Right-click MAC Pools under the root organization.

4.    Select Create MAC Pool to create the MAC address pool.

5.    Enter MAC-Pool-A as the name of the MAC pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the MAC pool.

7.    Select **Sequential** as the option for Assignment Order.

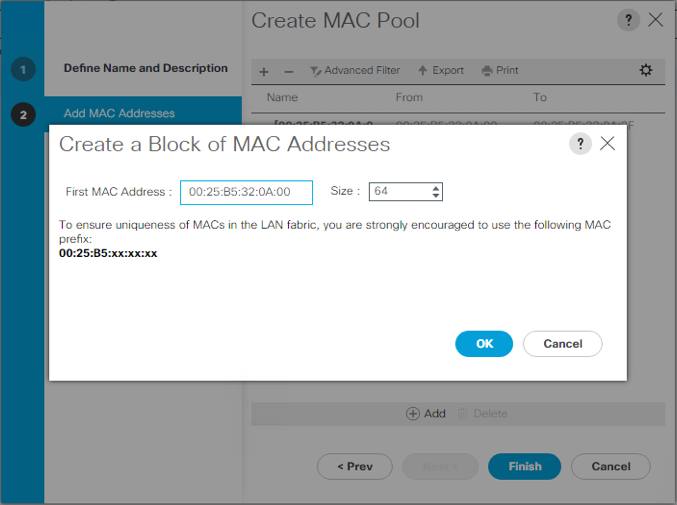
8.    Click Next.

9.    Click Add.

10.  Specify a starting MAC address.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, the recommendation is to place 0A in the next-to-last octet of the starting MAC address to identify all of the MAC addresses as fabric A addresses.  In our example, we have carried forward the of also embedding the UCS domain number information giving us 00:25:B5:32:0A:00 as our first MAC address.

11.  Specify a size for the MAC address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_31.png)

12.  Click OK.

13.  Click Finish.

14.  In the confirmation message, click OK.

15.  Right-click MAC Pools under the root organization.

16.  Select Create MAC Pool to create the MAC address pool.

17.  Enter MAC-Pool-B as the name of the MAC pool.

18.  Optional: Enter a description for the MAC pool.

19.  Select **Sequential** as the option for Assignment Order.

20.  Click Next.

21.  Click Add.

22.  Specify a starting MAC address.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, it is recommended to place 0B in the next to last octet of the starting MAC address to identify all the MAC addresses in this pool as fabric B addresses.  Once again, we have carried forward in our example of also embedding the UCS domain number information giving us 00:25:B5:32:0B:00 as our first MAC address.

23.  Specify a size for the MAC address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

24.  Click OK.

25.  Click Finish.

26.  In the confirmation message, click OK.

**Create UUID Suffix Pool**

To configure the necessary universally unique identifier (UUID) suffix pool for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

3.    Right-click UUID Suffix Pools.

4.    Select Create UUID Suffix Pool.

5.    Enter UUID-Pool as the name of the UUID suffix pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the UUID suffix pool.

7.    Keep the prefix at the derived option.

8.    Select **Sequential** for the Assignment Order.

9.    Click Next.

10.  Click Add to add a block of UUIDs.

11.  Keep the From field at the default setting.

12.  Specify a size for the UUID block that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

13.  Click OK.

14.  Click Finish.

15.  Click OK.

**Create Server Pool**

To configure the necessary server pool for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Consider creating unique server pools to achieve the granularity that is required in your environment.

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

3.    Right-click Server Pools.

4.    Select Create Server Pool.

5.    Enter Infra-Pool as the name of the server pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the server pool.

7.    Click Next.

8.    Select two (or more) servers to be used for the VMware management cluster and click >> to add them to the Infra-Pool server pool.

9.    Click Finish.

10.  Click OK.

**Create VLANs**

To configure the necessary virtual local area networks (VLANs) for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this procedure, five unique VLANs are created. See [Table 2.](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#Table_2)

2.    Select LAN > LAN Cloud.

3.    Right-click VLANs.

4.    Select Create VLANs.

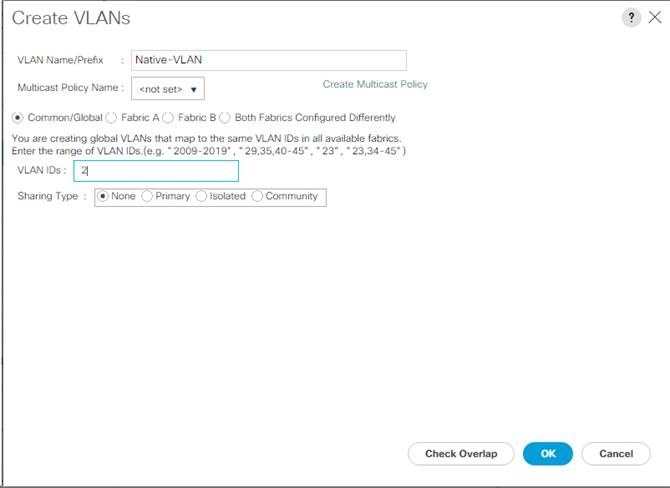
5.    Enter Native-VLAN as the name of the VLAN to be used as the native VLAN.

6.    Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

7.    Enter the native VLAN ID.

8.    Keep the Sharing Type as None.

9.    Click OK and then click OK again.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_32.jpg)

10.  Expand the list of VLANs in the navigation pane, right-click the newly created Native-VLAN and select Set as Native VLAN.

11.  Click Yes, and then click OK.

12.  Right-click VLANs.

13.  Select Create VLANs

14.  Enter IB-MGMT as the name of the VLAN to be used for management traffic.

15.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

16.  Enter the In-Band management VLAN ID.

17.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

18.  Click OK, and then click OK again.

19.  Right-click VLANs.

20.  Select Create VLANs.

21.  Enter Infra-NFS as the name of the VLAN to be used for NFS.

22.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

23.  Enter the Infrastructure NFS VLAN ID.

24.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

25.  Click OK, and then click OK again.

26.  Right-click VLANs.

27.  Select Create VLANs.

28.  Enter vMotion as the name of the VLAN to be used for vMotion.

29.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

30.  Enter the vMotion VLAN ID.

31.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

32.  Click OK, and then click OK again.

33.  Select Create VLANs.

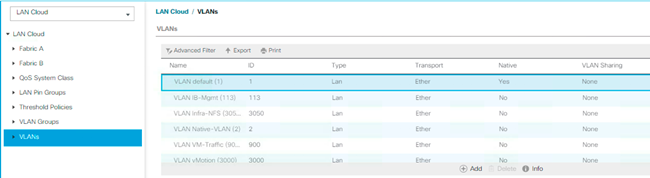
16.  Enter VM-Traffic as the name of the VLAN to be used for VM Traffic.

34.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

35.  Enter the VM-Traffic VLAN ID.

36.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

37.  Click OK, and then click OK again.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_33.png)

**Modify Default Host Firmware Package**

Firmware management policies allow the administrator to select the corresponding packages for a given server configuration. These policies often include packages for adapter, BIOS, board controller, FC adapters, host bus adapter (HBA) option ROM, and storage controller properties.

To create a firmware management policy for a given server configuration in the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

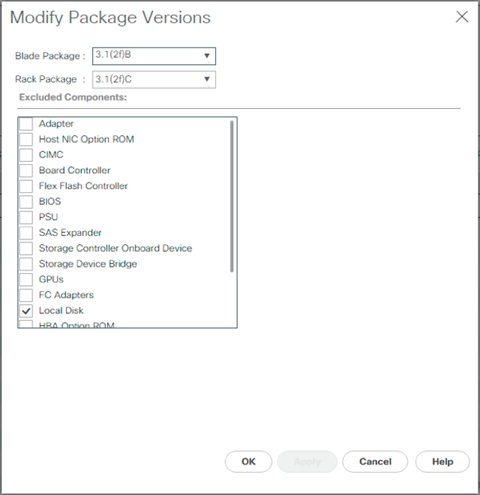
2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Expand Host Firmware Packages.

4.    Select default.

5.    In the Actions pane, select Modify Package Versions.

6.    Select the version 3.1(2f) for both the Blade and Rack Packages.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_34.png)

7.    Click OK, then click OK again to modify the host firmware package.

**Set Jumbo Frames in Cisco UCS Fabric**

To configure jumbo frames and enable quality of service in the Cisco UCS fabric, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

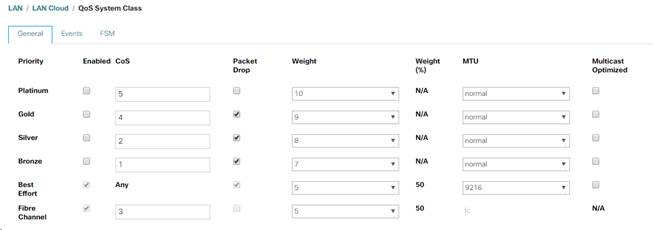
2.    Select LAN > LAN Cloud > QoS System Class.

3.    In the right pane, click the General tab.

4.    On the Best Effort row, enter 9216 in the box under the MTU column.

5.    Click Save Changes in the bottom of the window.

6.    Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_35.jpg)

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Only the Fibre Channel and Best Effort QoS System Classes are enabled in this FlexPod implementation.  The UCS and Nexus switches are intentionally configured this way so that all IP traffic within the FlexPod will be treated as Best Effort.  Enabling the other QoS System Classes without having a comprehensive, end-to-end QoS setup in place can cause difficult to troubleshoot issues.  For example, NetApp storage controllers by default mark IP-based storage protocol packets with a CoS value of 4.  With the default configuration on the Nexus switches in this implementation, storage packets will pass through the switches and into the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects with CoS 4 set in the packet header.  If the Gold QoS System Class in the Cisco UCS is enabled, these storage packets will be treated according to that class and if Jumbo Frames is being used for the storage protocols, but the MTU of the Gold QoS System Class is not set to Jumbo, packet drops will occur.

**Create Local Disk Configuration Policy (Optional)**

A local disk configuration for the Cisco UCS environment is necessary if the servers in the environment do not have a local disk.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This policy should not be used on servers that contain local disks.

To create a local disk configuration policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

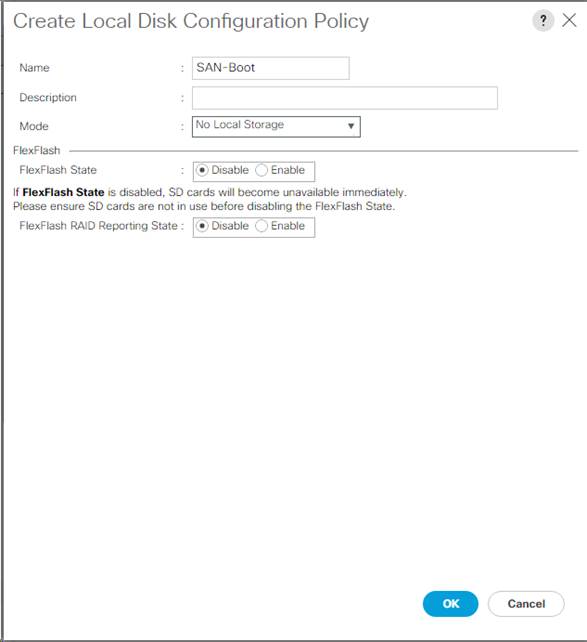
3.    Right-click Local Disk Config Policies.

4.    Select Create Local Disk Configuration Policy.

5.    Enter SAN-Boot as the local disk configuration policy name.

6.    Change the mode to No Local Storage.

7.    Click OK to create the local disk configuration policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_36.jpg)

8.    Click OK.

**Create Network Control Policy for Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) and Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)**

To create a network control policy that enables CDP and LLDP on virtual network ports, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Network Control Policies.

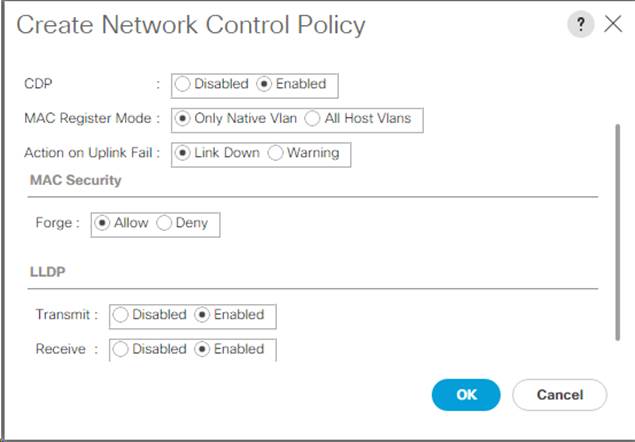
4.    Select Create Network Control Policy.

5.    Enter Enable-CDP-LLDP as the policy name.

6.    For CDP, select the Enabled option.

7.    For LLDP, scroll down and select Enabled for both Transmit and Receive.

8.    Click OK to create the network control policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_37.jpg)

9.    Click OK.

**Create Power Control Policy**

To create a power control policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers tab on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Power Control Policies.

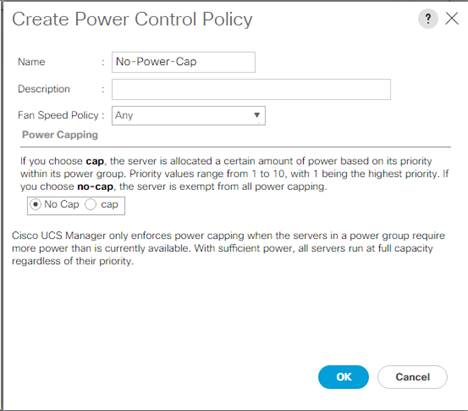
4.    Select Create Power Control Policy.

5.    Enter No-Power-Cap as the power control policy name.

6.    Change the power capping setting to No Cap.

7.    Click OK to create the power control policy.

8.    Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_38.jpg)

**Create Server Pool Qualification Policy (Optional)**

To create an optional server pool qualification policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This example creates a policy for Cisco UCS B-Series and Cisco UCS C-Series servers with the Intel E2660 v4 Xeon Broadwell processors.

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Server Pool Policy Qualifications.

4.    Select Create Server Pool Policy Qualification.

5.    Name the policy UCS-Broadwell.

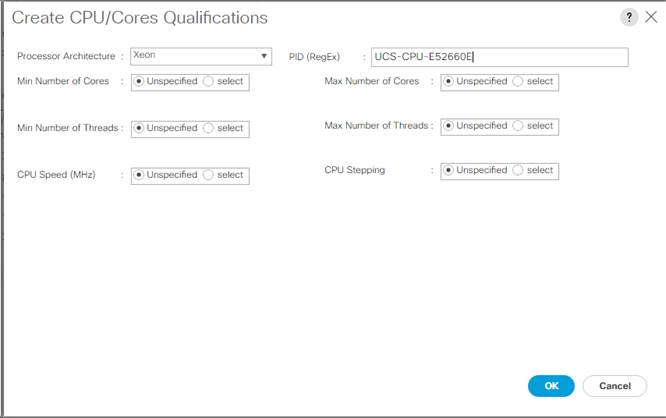
6.    Select Create CPU/Cores Qualifications.

7.    Select Xeon for the Processor/Architecture.

8.    Enter UCS-CPU-E52660E as the PID.

9.    Click OK to create the CPU/Core qualification.

10.  Click OK to create the policy then OK for the confirmation.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_39.jpg)

**Create Server BIOS Policy**

To create a server BIOS policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

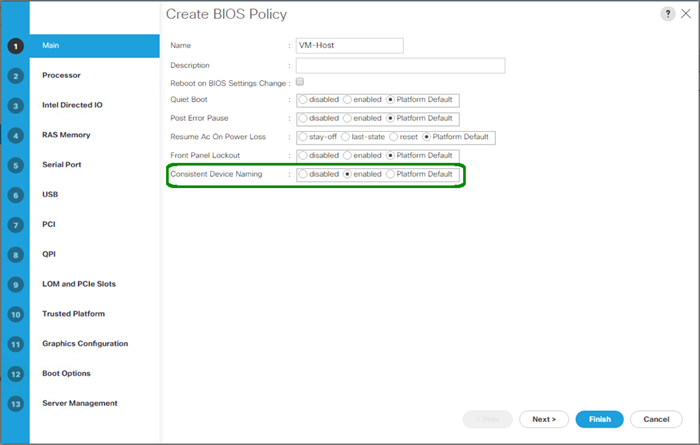
3.    Right-click BIOS Policies.

4.    Select Create BIOS Policy.

5.    Enter VM-Host as the BIOS policy name.

6.    Change the Quiet Boot setting to disabled.

7.    Change Consistent Device Naming to enabled.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_40.png)

8.    Click the Processor tab on the left.

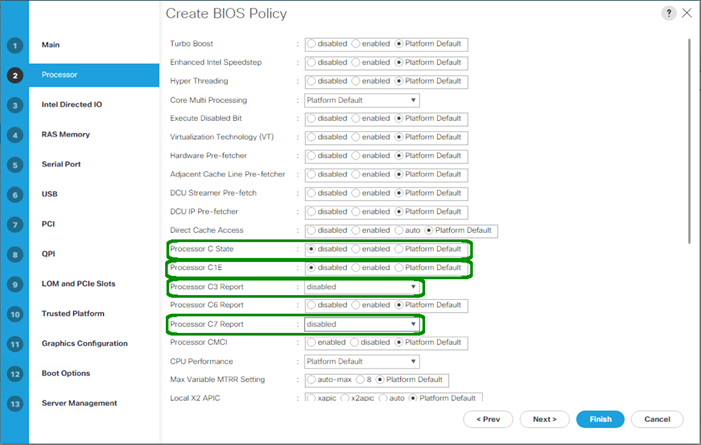
9.    Set the following within the Processor tab:

a.     Processor C State -> disabled

b.    Processor C1E -> disabled

c.     Processor C3 Report -> disabled

d.    Processor C7 Report -> disabled

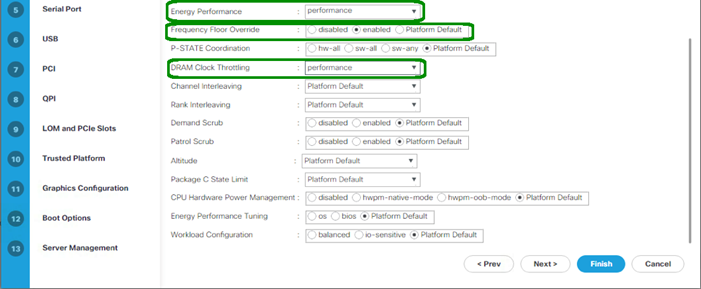
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_41.png)

10.  Scroll down to the remaining Processor options, and select:

a.     Energy Performance -> performance

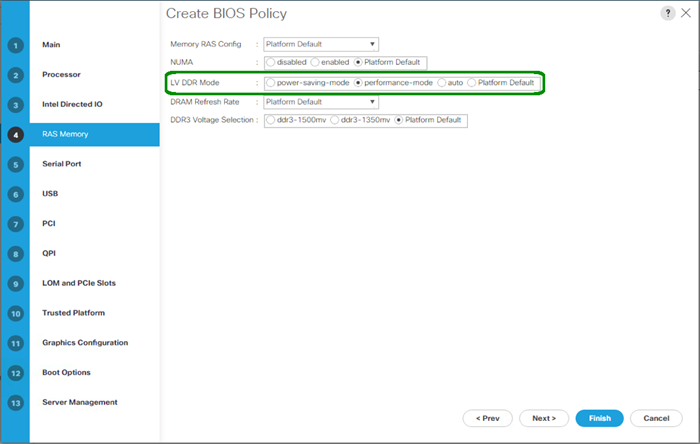
b.    Frequency Floor Override -> enabled

c.     DRAM Clock Throttling -> performance

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_42.png)

11.  Click the RAS Memory option, and select:

a.     LV DDR Mode -> performance-mode

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_43.png)

12.  Click Finish to create the BIOS policy.

13.  Click OK.

**Update the Default Maintenance Policy**

To update the default Maintenance Policy, complete the following steps:

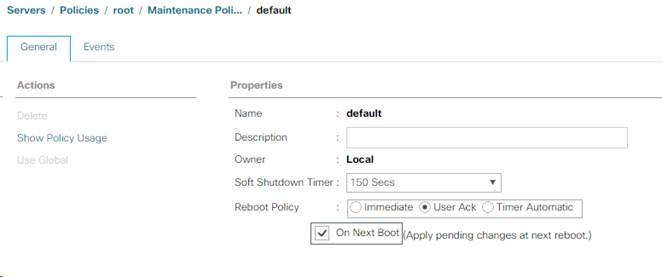
1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Select Maintenance Policies > default.

4.    Change the Reboot Policy to User Ack.

5.    Select “On Next Boot” to delegate maintenance windows to server administrators.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_44.jpg)

6.    Click Save Changes.

7.    Click OK to accept the change.

**Create vNIC Templates**

To create multiple virtual network interface card (vNIC) templates for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps. A total of 2 vNIC Templates will be created.

**Create Infrastructure vNICs**

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vNIC Templates.

4.    Select Create vNIC Template.

5.    Enter Infra-A as the vNIC template name.

6.    Keep Fabric A selected.

7.    Select the Enable Failover checkbox.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Selecting Failover is a critical step to improve link failover time by handling it at the hardware level, and to guard against NIC any potential for NIC failure not being detected by the virtual switch.

8.    Select Primary Template for Redundancy Type.

9.    Leave the Peer Redundancy Template set to <not set>.

10.  Under Target, make sure that only the Adapter checkbox is selected.

11.  Select Updating Template as the Template Type.

12.  Under VLANs, select the checkboxes for IB-MGMT, Infra-NFS, vMotion  VM-Traffic, and Native-VLAN VLANs.

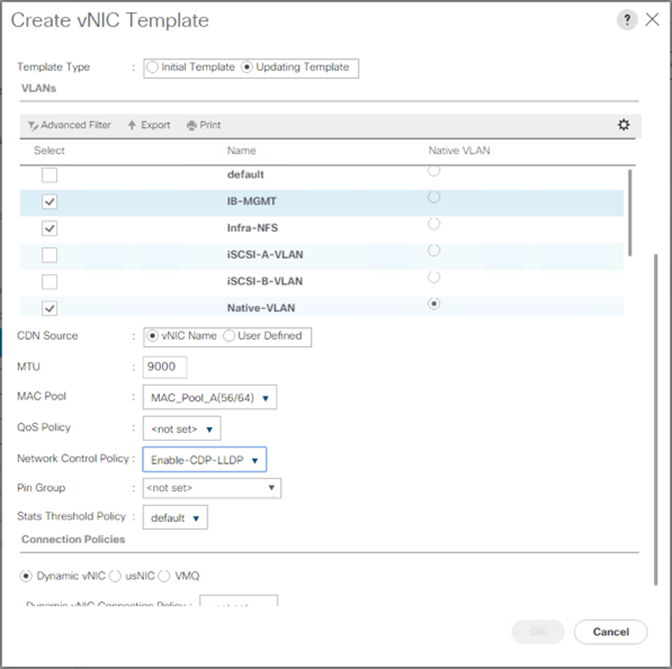
13.  Set Native-VLAN as the native VLAN.

14.  Select vNIC Name for the CDN Source.

15.  For MTU, enter 9000.

16.  In the MAC Pool list, select MAC-Pool-A.

17.  In the Network Control Policy list, select Enable-CDP-LLDP.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_45.png)

18.  Click OK to create the vNIC template.

19.  Click OK.

Create the secondary redundancy template Infra-B:

1.    Select LAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vNIC Templates.

4.    Select Create vNIC Template

5.    Enter Infra-B as the vNIC template name.

6.    Select Fabric B.

7.    Select the Enable Failover checkbox.

8.    Set Redundancy Type to Secondary Template.

9.    Select Infra-A for the Peer Redundancy Template.

10.  In the MAC Pool list, select MAC-Pool-B. The MAC Pool is all that needs to be selected for the Secondary Template.

11.  Click OK to create the vNIC template.

12.  Click OK.

**Create LAN Connectivity Policy for FC Boot**

To configure the necessary Infrastructure LAN Connectivity Policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select LAN > Policies > root.

3.    Right-click LAN Connectivity Policies.

4.    Select Create LAN Connectivity Policy.

5.    Enter FC-Boot as the name of the policy.

6.    Click the upper Add button to add a vNIC.

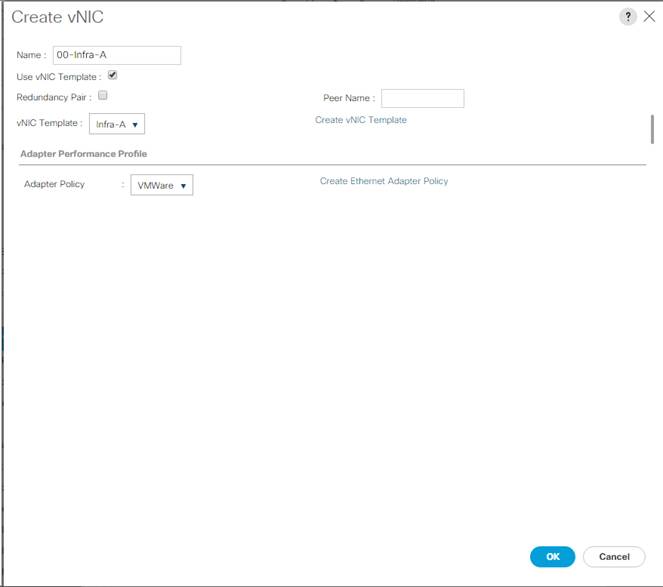
7.    In the Create vNIC dialog box, enter 00-Infra-A as the name of the vNIC.

8.    Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.

9.    In the vNIC Template list, select Infra-A.

10.  In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

11.  Click OK to add this vNIC to the policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_46.jpg)

12.  Click the upper Add button to add another vNIC to the policy.

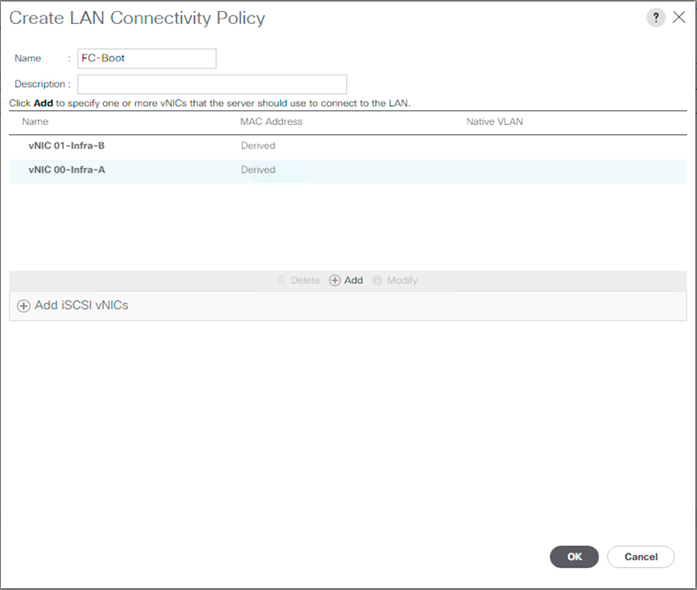
13.  In the Create vNIC box, enter 01-Infra-B as the name of the vNIC.

14.  Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.

15.  In the vNIC Template list, select Infra-B.

16.  In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

17.  Click OK to add the vNIC to the policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_47.png)

18.  Click OK, then click OK again to create the LAN Connectivity Policy.

**Create vMedia Policy for VMware ESXi 6.5a Install Boot**

In the NetApp ONTAP setup steps an HTTP web server is required, which will be used for hosting ONTAP as well as VMware software. The vMedia Policy created will map the VMware ESXi 6.5a ISO to the Cisco UCS server in order to boot the ESXi installation.  To create this policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, select Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vMedia Policies.

4.    Select Create vMedia Policy.

5.    Name the policy ESXi-6.5a-HTTP.

6.    Enter “Mounts ISO for ESXi 6.5a” in the Description field.

7.    Click Add.

8.    Name the mount ESXi-6.5a-HTTP.

9.    Select the CDD Device Type.

10.  Select the HTTP Protocol.

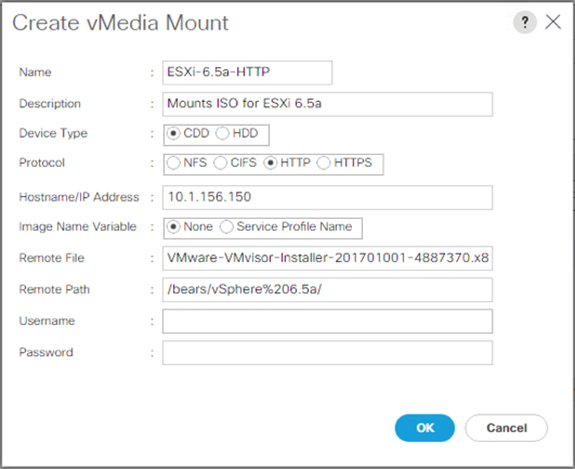
11.  Enter the IP Address of the web server.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Since DNS server IPs were not entered into the KVM IP earlier, it is necessary to enter the IP of the web server instead of the hostname.

12.  Enter VMware-VMvisor-Installer-201701001-4887370.x86\_64.iso as the Remote File name.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This VMware ESXi 6.5a ISO can be downloaded from [VMware Downloads](https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=ESXI650A&productId=614).

13.  Enter the web server path to the ISO file in the Remote Path field.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_48.png)

14.  Click OK to create the vMedia Mount.

15.  Click OK then OK again to complete creating the vMedia Policy.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For any new servers added to the Cisco UCS environment the vMedia service profile template can be used to install the ESXi host.  On first boot the host will boot into the ESXi installer since the SAN mounted disk is empty. After ESXi is installed, the vMedia will not be referenced as long as the boot disk is accessible.

**Create FC Boot Policy**

This procedure applies to a Cisco UCS environment in which two Fibre Channel logical interfaces (LIFs) are on cluster node 1 (fcp\_lif01a and fcp\_lif01b) and two Fibre Channel LIFs are on cluster node 2 (fcp\_lif02a andfcp\_lif02b). Also, it is assumed that the A LIFs are connected to Fabric A (Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect A) and the B LIFs are connected to Fabric B (Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect B).

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          One boot policy is configured in this procedure. The policy configures the primary target to be fcp\_lif01a.

To create a boot policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Boot Policies.

4.    Select Create Boot Policy.

5.    Enter Boot-Fabric-A as the name of the boot policy.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the boot policy.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Do not select the Reboot on Boot Order Change checkbox.

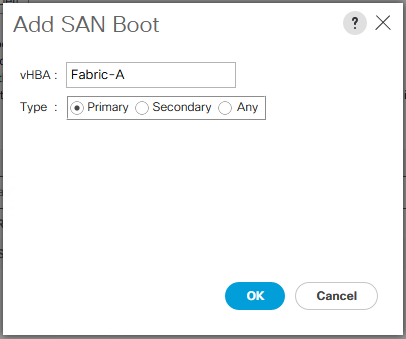
7.    Keep the Reboot on Boot Order Change option cleared.

8.    Expand the Local Devices drop-down menu and select Add Remote CD/DVD.

9.    Expand the vHBAs drop-down menu and select Add SAN Boot.

10.  Select the Primary for type field.

11.  Enter Fabric-A in vHBA field.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_49.png)

12.  Click OK.

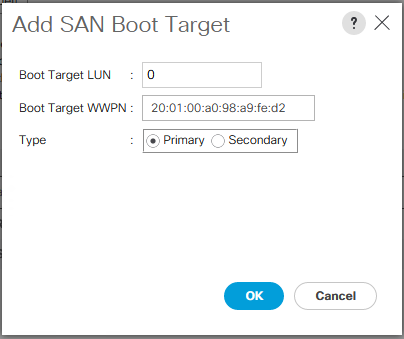
13.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

14.  Keep 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

15.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif01a

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          To obtain this information, log in to the storage cluster and run the network interface show command

16.  Select Primary for the SAN boot target type.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_50.png)

17.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

18.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

19.  Enter 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

20.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif02a.

21.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

22.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot.

23.  In the Add SAN Boot dialog box, enter Fabric-B in the vHBA box.

24.  The SAN boot type should automatically be set to Secondary.

25.  Click OK to add the SAN boot.

26.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

27.  Keep 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

28.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif01b.

29.  Select Primary for the SAN boot target type.

30.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

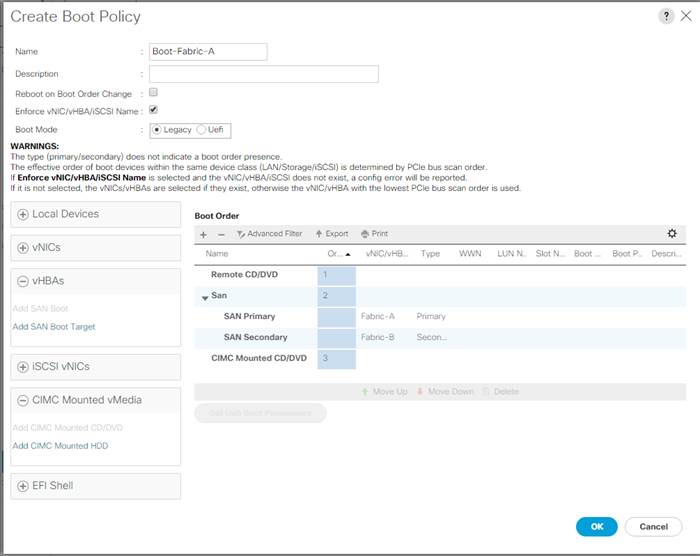
31.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

32.  Keep 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

33.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif02b.

34.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

35.  Expand CIMC Mounted Media and select Add CIMC Mounted CD/DVD.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_51.jpg)

36.  Click OK, then click OK again to create the boot policy.

**Create Service Profile Templates**

In this procedure, one service profile template for Infrastructure ESXi hosts is created for Fabric A boot.

To create the service profile template, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Service Profile Templates > root.

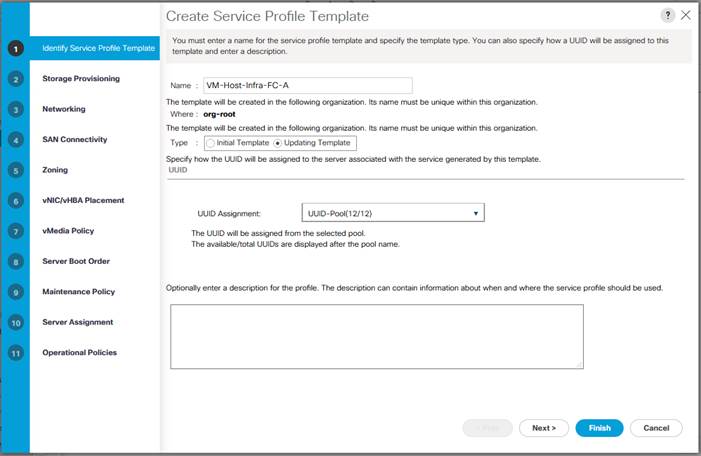
3.    Right-click root.

4.    Select Create Service Profile Template to open the Create Service Profile Template wizard.

5.    Enter VM-Host-Infra-FC-A as the name of the service profile template. This service profile template is configured to boot from storage node 1 on fabric A.

6.    Select the “Updating Template” option.

7.    Under UUID, select UUID\_Pool as the UUID pool.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_52.jpg)

8.    Click Next.

**Configure Storage Provisioning**

1.    If you have servers with no physical disks, click on the Local Disk Configuration Policy and select the SAN-Boot Local Storage Policy. Otherwise, select the default Local Storage Policy.

2.    Click Next.

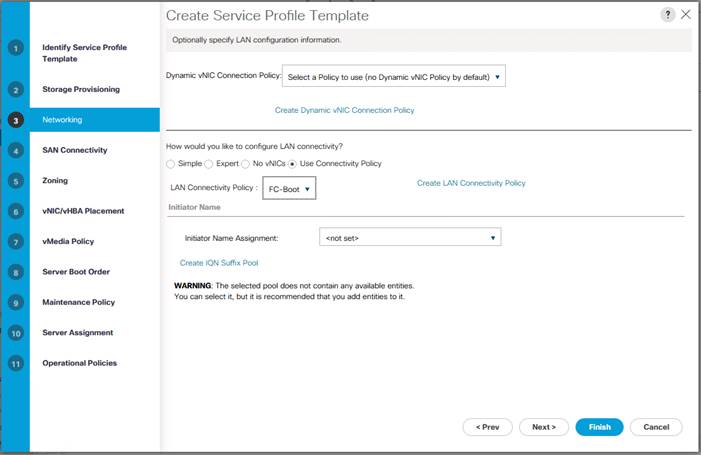
**Configure Networking Options**

1.    Keep the default setting for Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy.

2.    Select the “Use Connectivity Policy” option to configure the LAN connectivity.

3.    Select FC-Boot from the LAN Connectivity Policy pull-down.

4.    Leave Initiator Name Assignment at <not set>.

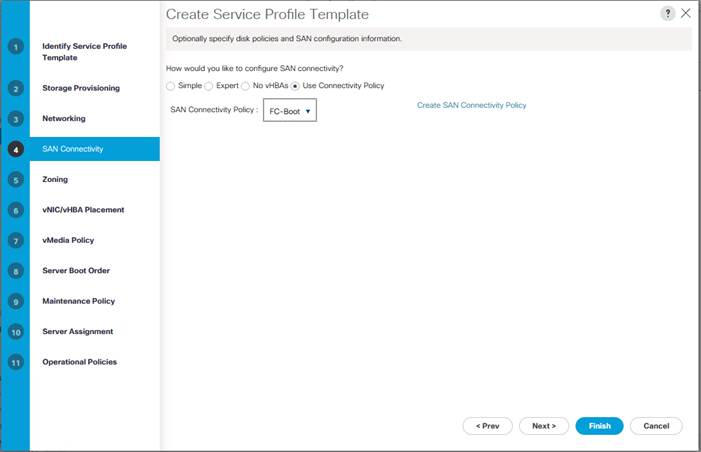
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_53.jpg)

5.    Click Next.

**Configure Storage Options**

1.    Select the Use Connectivity Policy option for the “How would you like to configure SAN connectivity?” field.

2.    Select the FC-Boot option from the SAN Connectivity Policy pull-down.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_54.jpg)

3.    Click Next.

**Configure Zoning Options**

1.    Click Next.

Configure vNIC/HBA Placement

1.    In the “Select Placement” list, leave the placement policy as “Let System Perform Placement”.

2.    Click Next.

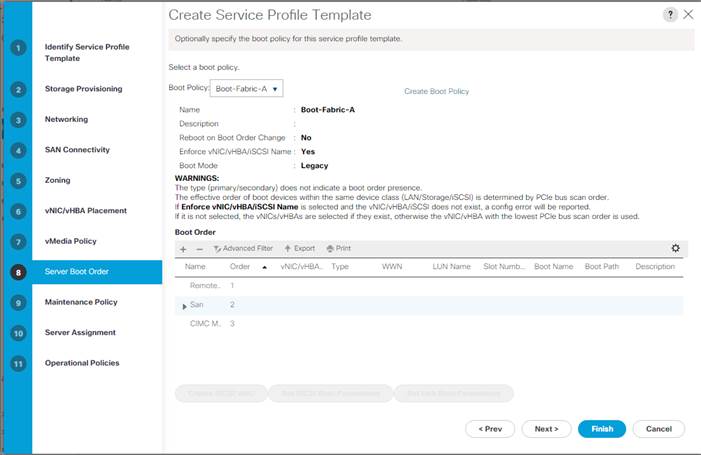
**Configure vMedia Policy**

1.    Do not select a vMedia Policy.

2.    Click Next.

**Configure Server Boot Order**

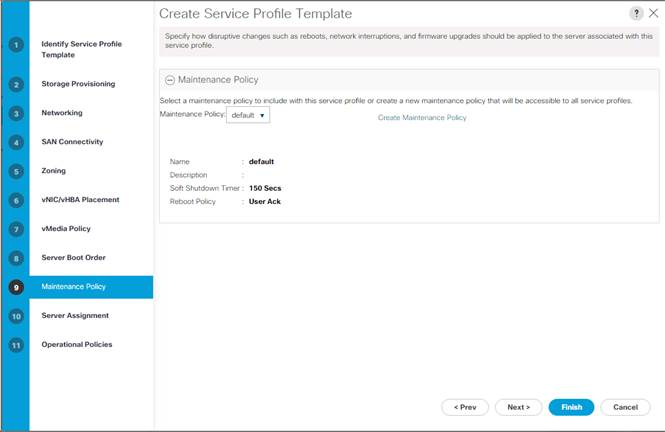
1.    Select Boot-FC-A for Boot Policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_55.jpg)

2.    Click Next.

**Configure Maintenance Policy**

1.    Change the Maintenance Policy to default.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_56.jpg)

2.    Click Next.

**Configure Server Assignment**

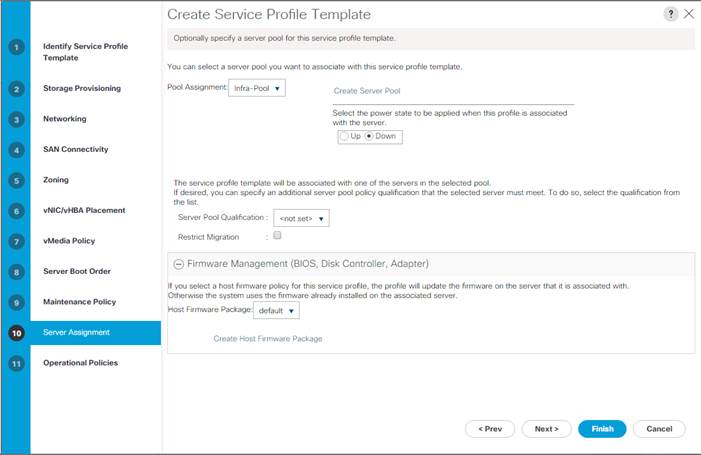
To configure server assignment, complete the following steps:

1.    In the Pool Assignment list, select Infra-Pool.

2.    Select Down as the power state to be applied when the profile is associated with the server.

3.    Optional: select “UCS-Broadwell” for the Server Pool Qualification.

4.    Expand Firmware Management at the bottom of the page and select the default policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_57.jpg)

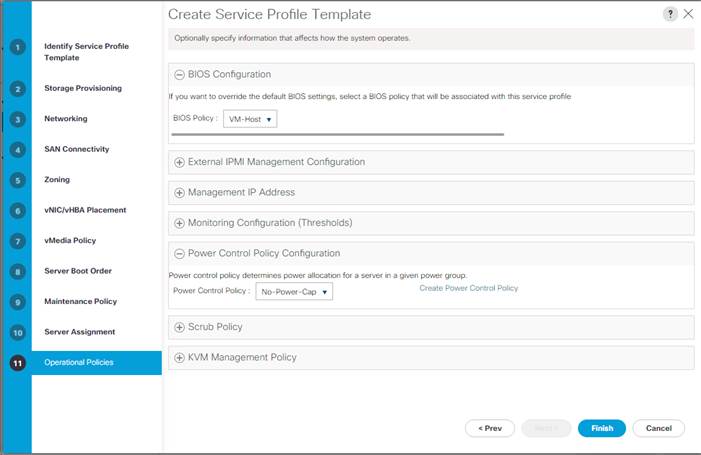
5.    Click Next.

**Configure Operational Policies**

To configure the operational policies, complete the following steps:

1.    In the BIOS Policy list, select VM-Host.

2.    Expand Power Control Policy Configuration and select No-Power-Cap in the Power Control Policy list.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_58.jpg)

3.    Click Finish to create the service profile template.

4.    Click OK in the confirmation message.

**Create vMedia-Enabled Service Profile Template**

To create a service profile template with vMedia enabled, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to UCS Manager and click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Service Profile Templates > root > Service Template VM-Host-Infra-FC-A.

3.    Right-click VM-Host-Infra-FC-A and select Create a Clone.

4.    Name the clone VM-Host-Infra-FC-A-vM.

5.    Select the newly-created VM-Host-Infra-FC-A-vM and select the vMedia Policy tab on the right.

6.    Click Modify vMedia Policy.

7.    Select the ESXi-6.5a-HTTP vMedia Policy and click OK.

8.    Click OK to confirm.

**Create Service Profiles**

To create service profiles from the service profile template, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to UCS Manager and click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Service Profile Templates > root > Service Template VM-Host-Infra-FC-A-vM.

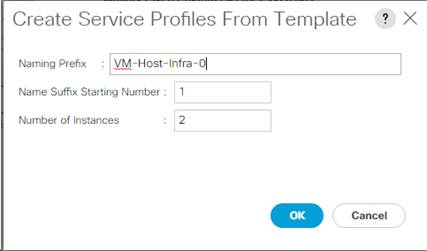
3.    Right-click VM-Host-Infra-FC-A and select Create Service Profiles from Template.

4.    Enter VM-Host-Infra-0 as the service profile prefix.

5.    Enter 1 as “Name Suffix Starting Number.”

6.    Enter 2 as the “Number of Instances.”

7.    Click OK to create the service profiles.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_59.jpg)

8.    Click OK in the confirmation message.

9.    When VMware ESXi 6.5a has been installed on the hosts, the host Service Profiles can be bound to the VM-Host-Infra-FC-A Service Profile Template to remove the vMedia Mapping from the host.

**Add More Servers to FlexPod Unit**

Additional server pools, service profile templates, and service profiles can be created in the respective organizations to add more servers to the FlexPod unit. All other pools and policies are at the root level and can be shared among the organizations.

**Gather Necessary Information**

After the Cisco UCS service profiles have been created, each infrastructure server in the environment will have a unique configuration. To proceed with the FlexPod deployment, specific information must be gathered from each Cisco UCS server and from the NetApp controllers. Insert the required information into Table 6 and Table 7 below.

Table 6    WWPNs from NetApp Storage

| SVM | Adapter | MDS Switch | Target: WWPN |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Infra-SVM | fcp\_lif01a | Fabric A | <fcp\_lif01a-wwpn> |
| fcp\_lif01b | Fabric B | <fcp\_lif01b-wwpn> |
| fcp\_lif02a | Fabric A | <fcp\_lif02a-wwpn> |
| fcp\_lif02b | Fabric B | <fcp\_lif02b-wwpn> |

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          To obtain the FC WWPNs, run the network interface show command on the storage cluster management interface .

Table 7    WWPNs for Cisco UCS Service Profiles

| Cisco UCS Service Profile Name | MDS Switch | Initiator WWPN |
| --- | --- | --- |
| VM-Host-Infra-01 | Fabric A | vm-host-infra-01-wwpna |
| Fabric B | vm-host-infra-01-wwpnb |
| VM-Host-Infra-02 | Fabric A | vm-host-infra-02-wwpna |
| Fabric B | vm-host-infra-02-wwpnb |

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          To obtain the FC vHBA WWPN information in Cisco UCS Manager GUI, go to Servers > Service Profiles > root. Click each service profile and then click the “Storage” tab, then “vHBAs” tab on the right. The WWPNs are displayed in the table at the bottom of the page.

SAN Switch Configuration

This section provides a detailed procedure for configuring the Cisco MDS 9000s for use in a FlexPod environment. Follow these steps precisely because failure to do so could result in an improper configuration.

If directly connecting storage to the Cisco UCS fabric interconnects, skip this section.

Physical Connectivity

Follow the physical connectivity guidelines for FlexPod as covered in the section “FlexPod Cabling.”

FlexPod Cisco MDS Base

The following procedures describe how to configure the Cisco Nexus switches for use in a base FlexPod environment. This procedure assumes you are using the Cisco MDS 9148s with NX-OS.

Set Up Initial Configuration

Cisco MDS 9148S A

To set up the initial configuration for the Cisco MDS A switch, <mds-A-hostname>, complete the following steps:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          On initial boot and connection to the serial or console port of the switch, the NX-OS setup should automatically start and attempt to enter Power on Auto Provisioning

1.    Configure the switch using the command line.

Do you want to enforce secure password standard (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Enter the password for "admin": <password>

Confirm the password for "admin": <password>

Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes

Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enter the switch name : <mds-A-hostname> Enter

Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Mgmt0 IPv4 address : <mds-A-mgmt0-ip> Enter

Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask : <mds-A-mgmt0-netmask> Enter

Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

IPv4 address of the default gateway : <mds-A-mgmt0-gw> Enter

Configure advanced IP options? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa) [rsa]: Enter

Number of rsa key bits <1024-2048> [1024]: Enter

Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure congestion/no\_credit drop for fc interfaces? (yes/no)     [y]: Enter

Enter the type of drop to configure congestion/no\_credit drop? (con/no) [c]: Enter

Enter milliseconds in multiples of 10 for congestion-drop for port mode F

in range (<100-500>/default), where default is 500.  [d]: Enter

Enable the http-server? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Configure timezone? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure summertime? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [n]: yes

NTP server IPv4 address : <switch-a-ntp-ip>

Configure default switchport interface state (shut/noshut) [shut]: Enter

Configure default switchport trunk mode (on/off/auto) [on]: Enter

Configure default switchport port mode F (yes/no) [n]: yes

Configure default zone policy (permit/deny) [deny]: Enter

Enable full zoneset distribution? (yes/no) [n]: yes

Configure default zone mode (basic/enhanced) [basic]: Enter

2.    Review the configuration.

Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Cisco MDS 9148S B

To set up the initial configuration for the Cisco MDS B switch, <mds-B-hostname>, complete the following steps:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          On initial boot and connection to the serial or console port of the switch, the NX-OS setup should automatically start and attempt to enter Power on Auto Provisioning

1.    Configure the switch using the command line.

Do you want to enforce secure password standard (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Enter the password for "admin": <password>

Confirm the password for "admin": <password>

Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes

Create another login account (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enter the switch name : <mds-B-hostname> Enter

Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Mgmt0 IPv4 address : <mds-B-mgmt0-ip> Enter

Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask : <mds-B-mgmt0-netmask> Enter

Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

IPv4 address of the default gateway : <mds-B-mgmt0-gw> Enter

Configure advanced IP options? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa) [rsa]: Enter

Number of rsa key bits <1024-2048> [1024]: Enter

Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure congestion/no\_credit drop for fc interfaces? (yes/no)     [y]: Enter

Enter the type of drop to configure congestion/no\_credit drop? (con/no) [c]: Enter

Enter milliseconds in multiples of 10 for congestion-drop for port mode F

in range (<100-500>/default), where default is 500.  [d]: Enter

Enable the http-server? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

Configure timezone? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure summertime? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [n]: yes

NTP server IPv4 address : <<var\_global\_ntp\_server\_ip>>

Configure default switchport interface state (shut/noshut) [shut]: Enter

Configure default switchport trunk mode (on/off/auto) [on]: Enter

Configure default switchport port mode F (yes/no) [n]: yes

Configure default zone policy (permit/deny) [deny]: Enter

Enable full zoneset distribution? (yes/no) [n]: yes

Configure default zone mode (basic/enhanced) [basic]: Enter

2.    Review the configuration.

Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]: Enter

Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]: Enter

**FlexPod Cisco MDS Switch Configuration**

**Enable Licenses**

**Cisco MDS 9148S A and Cisco MDS 9148S B**

To enable the correct features on the Cisco MDS switches, complete the following steps:

1.    Log in as admin

2.    Run the following commands:

configure terminal

feature npiv

feature fport-channel-trunk

**Configure Individual Ports**

**Cisco MDS 9148S A**

To configure individual ports and port-channels for switch A, complete the following step:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this step and in further sections, configure the <ucs-6248-clustername> and <ucs-6332-clustername> interfaces as appropriate to your deployment.

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

interface fc1/1

switchport description <st-node01>:0e

switchport trunk mode off

port-license acquire

no shut

interface fc1/2

switchport description <st-node02>:0e

switchport trunk mode off

port-license acquire

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/9

switchport description <ucs-6248-clustername>-a:1/31

port-license acquire

channel-group 110

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/10

switchport description <ucs-6248-clustername>-b:1/31

port-license acquire

channel-group 110

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/11

switchport description <ucs-6332-clustername>-a:1/1

port-license acquire

channel-group 112

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/12

switchport description <ucs-6332-clustername>-b:1/1

port-license acquire

channel-group 112

no shutdown

exit

interface port-channel110

channel mode active

switchport mode F

switchport trunk allowed vsan <vsan-a-id>

switchport description <ucs-6248-clustername>

switchport rate-mode dedicated

interface port-channel112

channel mode active

switchport mode F

switchport trunk allowed vsan <vsan-a-id>

switchport description <ucs-6332-clustername>

switchport rate-mode dedicated

**Create Port Descriptions - Fabric B**

To configure individual ports and port-channels for switch B, complete the following step:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

interface fc1/1

switchport description <st-node01>:0f

switchport trunk mode off

port-license acquire

no shut

interface fc1/2

switchport description <st-node02>:0f

switchport trunk mode off

port-license acquire

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/9

switchport description <ucs-6248-clustername>-a:1/32

port-license acquire

channel-group 111

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/10

switchport description <ucs-6248-clustername>-a:1/32

port-license acquire

channel-group 111

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/11

switchport description <ucs-6332-clustername>-a:1/2

port-license acquire

channel-group 113

no shutdown

exit

interface fc1/12

switchport description <ucs-6332-clustername>-a:1/2

port-license acquire

channel-group 113

no shutdown

exit

interface port-channel111

channel mode active

switchport mode F

switchport trunk allowed vsan <vsan-b-id>

switchport description <ucs-6248-clustername>

switchport rate-mode dedicated

interface port-channel113

channel mode active

switchport mode F

switchport trunk allowed vsan <vsan-b-id>

switchport description <ucs-6332-clustername>

switchport rate-mode dedicated

**Create VSANs**

**Cisco MDS 9148S A**

To create the necessary VSANs for fabric A and add ports to them, complete the following steps:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

vsan database

vsan <vsan-a-id>

vsan <vsan-a-id> name Fabric-A

exit

zone smart-zoning enable vsan <vsan-a-id>

vsan database

vsan <vsan-a-id> interface fc1/1

vsan <vsan-a-id> interface fc1/2

vsan <vsan-a-id> interface port-channel110

vsan <vsan-a-id> interface port-channel112

**Cisco MDS 9148S B**

To create the necessary VSANs for fabric A and add ports to them, complete the following steps:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

vsan database

vsan <vsan-b-id>

vsan <vsan-b-id> name Fabric-B

exit

zone smart-zoning enable vsan <vsan-b-id>

vsan database

vsan <vsan-b-id> interface fc1/1

vsan <vsan-b-id> interface fc1/2

vsan <vsan-b-id> interface port-channel111

vsan <vsan-b-id> interface port-channel113

**Create Device Aliases**

**Cisco MDS 9148S A**

To create device aliases for Fabric A that will be used to create zones, complete the following steps:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

configure terminal

device-alias database

device-alias name Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif01a pwwn <fcp\_lif01a-wwpn>

device-alias name Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif02a pwwn <fcp\_lif02a-wwpn>

device-alias name VM-Host-Infra-01-A pwwn <vm-host-infra-01-wwpna>

device-alias name VM-Host-Infra-02-A pwwn <vm-host-infra-02-wwpna>

device-alias commit

**Cisco MDS 9148S B**

To create device aliases for Fabric B that will be used to create zones, complete the following steps:

From the global configuration mode, run the following commands:

configure terminal

device-alias database

device-alias name Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif01b pwwn <fcp\_lif01b-wwpn>

device-alias name Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif02b pwwn <fcp\_lif02b-wwpn>

device-alias name VM-Host-Infra-01-B pwwn <vm-host-infra-01-wwpnb>

device-alias name VM-Host-Infra-02-B pwwn <vm-host-infra-02-wwpnb>

device-alias commit

**Create Zones**

**Cisco MDS 9148S A**

To create the required zones on Fabric A, run the following commands:

configure terminal

zone name VM-Host-Infra-01-A vsan <vsan-a-id>

member device-alias VM-Host-Infra-01-A init

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif01a target

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif02a target

exit

zone name VM-Host-Infra-02-A vsan <vsan-a-id>

member device-alias VM-Host-Infra-02-A init

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif01a target

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif02a target

exit

zoneset name Fabric-A vsan <vsan-a-id>

member VM-Host-Infra-01-A

member VM-Host-Infra-02-A

exit

zoneset activate name Fabric-A vsan <vsan-a-id>

exit

show zoneset active vsan <vsan-a-id>

**Cisco MDS 9148S B**

To create the required zones on Fabric B, run the following commands:

configure terminal

zone name VM-Host-Infra-01-B vsan <vsan-b-id>

member device-alias VM-Host-Infra-01-B init

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif01b target

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif02b target

exit

zone name VM-Host-Infra-02-B vsan <vsan-b-id>

member device-alias VM-Host-Infra-02-B init

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif01b target

member device-alias Infra-SVM-fcp\_lif02b target

exit

zoneset name Fabric-B vsan <vsan-b-id>

member VM-Host-Infra-01-B

member VM-Host-Infra-02-B

exit

zoneset activate name Fabric-B vsan <vsan-b-id>

exit

show zoneset active vsan <vsan-b-id>

**Storage Configuration – Boot LUNs**

**ONTAP Boot Storage Setup**

**Create igroups**

Create igroups by entering the following commands from the cluster management node SSH connection:

igroup create –vserver Infra-SVM –igroup VM-Host-Infra-01 –protocol fcp –ostype vmware –initiator <vm-host-infra-01-wwpna>, <vm-host-infra-01-wwpnb>

igroup create –vserver Infra-SVM –igroup VM-Host-Infra-02 –protocol fcp –ostype vmware –initiator <vm-host-infra-02-wwpna>, <vm-host-infra-02-wwpnb>

igroup create –vserver Infra-SVM –igroup MGMT-Hosts –protocol fcp –ostype vmware –initiator <vm-host-infra-01-wwpna>, <vm-host-infra-01-wwpnb>, <vm-host-infra-02-wwpna>, <vm-host-infra-02-wwpnb>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Use the values listed in **Error! Reference source not found.** and **Error! Reference source not found.** for the WWPN information.

To view the three igroups just created, type igroup show.

**Map Boot LUNs to igroups**

From the storage cluster management SSH connection, enter the following commands:

lun map –vserver Infra-SVM –volume esxi\_boot –lun VM-Host-Infra-01 –igroup VM-Host-Infra-01 –lun-id 0  
lun map –vserver Infra-SVM –volume esxi\_boot –lun VM-Host-Infra-02 –igroup VM-Host-Infra-02 –lun-id 0

**VMware vSphere 6.5a Setup**

**VMware ESXi 6.5a**

This section provides detailed instructions for installing VMware ESXi 6.5a in an environment. After the procedures are completed, two booted ESXi hosts will be provisioned.

Several methods exist for installing ESXi in a VMware environment. These procedures focus on how to use the built-in keyboard, video, mouse (KVM) console and virtual media features in Cisco UCS Manager to map remote installation media to individual servers and connect to their boot logical unit numbers (LUNs).

**Download Cisco Custom Image for ESXi 6.5a**

If the VMware ESXi custom image has not been downloaded, complete the following steps:

1.    Click the following link: [VMware vSphere Hypervisor (ESXi) 6.5a](https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=ESXI650A&productId=614).

2.    You will need a user id and password on vmware.com to download this software.

3.    Download the .iso file.

**Log in to Cisco UCS 6300/6200 Fabric Interconnect**

**Cisco UCS Manager**

The Cisco UCS IP KVM enables the administrator to begin the installation of the operating system (OS) through remote media. It is necessary to log in to the Cisco UCS environment to run the IP KVM.

To log in to the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    Open a web browser and enter the IP address for the Cisco UCS cluster address. This step launches the Cisco UCS Manager application.

2.    Click the Launch UCS Manager link under HTML to launch the HTML 5 UCS Manager GUI.

3.    If prompted to accept security certificates, accept as necessary.

4.    When prompted, enter admin as the user name and enter the administrative password.

5.    To log in to Cisco UCS Manager, click Login.

6.    From the main menu, click Servers on the left.

7.    Select Servers > Service Profiles > root > VM-Host-Infra-01.

8.    Right-click VM-Host-Infra-01 and select KVM Console.

9.    Follow the prompts to launch the Java-based KVM console.

10.  Select Servers > Service Profiles > root > VM-Host-Infra-02.

11.  Right-click VM-Host-Infra-02. and select KVM Console.

12.  Follow the prompts to launch the Java-based KVM console.

**Set Up VMware ESXi Installation**

**ESXi Hosts VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Skip this section if using vMedia policies.  ISO file will already be connected to KVM.

To prepare the server for the OS installation, complete the following steps on each ESXi host:

1.    In the KVM window, click Virtual Media.

2.    Click Activate Virtual Devices

3.    If prompted to accept an Unencrypted KVM session, accept as necessary.

4.    Click Virtual Media and select Map CD/DVD.

5.    Browse to the ESXi installer ISO image file and click Open.

6.    Click Map Device.

7.    Click the KVM tab to monitor the server boot.

**Install ESXi**

**ESXi Hosts VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

To install VMware ESXi to the FC-bootable LUN of the hosts, complete the following steps on each host:

1.    Boot the server by selecting Boot Server and click OK, then click OK again.

2.    On reboot, the machine detects the presence of the ESXi installation media. Select the ESXi installer from the boot menu that is displayed.

3.    After the installer is finished loading, press Enter to continue with the installation.

4.    Read and accept the end-user license agreement (EULA). Press F11 to accept and continue.

5.    Select the LUN that was previously set up as the installation disk for ESXi and press Enter to continue with the installation.

6.    Select the appropriate keyboard layout and press Enter.

7.    Enter and confirm the root password and press Enter.

8.    The installer issues a warning that the selected disk will be repartitioned. Press F11 to continue with the installation.

9.    After the installation is complete, click on the Virtual Media tab and clear the checkmark next to the ESXi installation media. Click Yes.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The ESXi installation image must be unmapped to make sure that the server reboots into ESXi and not into the installer.

10.  After the installation is complete, press Enter to reboot the server.

11.  In Cisco UCS Manager, bind the current service profile to the non-vMedia service profile template to prevent mounting the ESXi installation iso over HTTP.

**Set Up Management Networking for ESXi Hosts**

Adding a management network for each VMware host is necessary for managing the host. To add a management network for the VMware hosts, complete the following steps on each ESXi host:

**ESXi Host VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

To configure each ESXi host with access to the management network, complete the following steps:

1.    After the server has finished rebooting, press F2 to customize the system.

2.    Log in as root, enter the corresponding password, and press Enter to log in.

3.    Select Troubleshooting Options and press Enter.

4.    Select Enable ESXi Shell and press Enter.

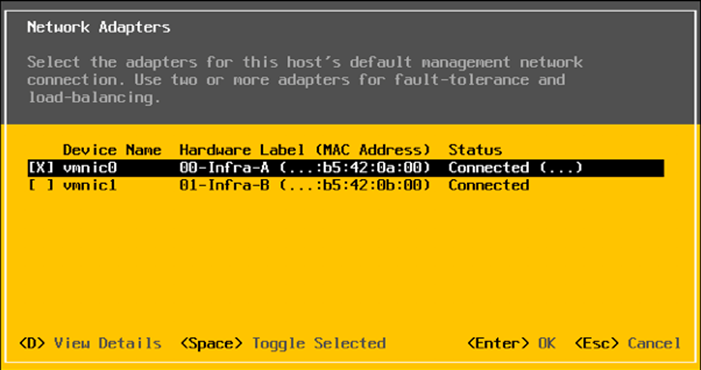
5.    Select Enable SSH and press Enter.

6.    Press Esc to exit the Troubleshooting Options menu.

7.    Select the Configure Management Network option and press Enter.

8.    Select Network Adapters and press Enter.

9.    Verify that the numbers in the Hardware Label field match the numbers in the Device Name field.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_60.png)

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In lab testing, examples have been seen with the Cisco UCS C220 M4 server and VIC 1385/1387 where the vmnic and device ordering do not match. If this is the case, use the Consistent Device Naming (CDN) to note which vmnics are mapped to which vNICs and adjust the upcoming procedure accordingly.

10.  Press Enter.

11.  Select the VLAN (Optional) option and press Enter.

12.  Enter the <ib-mgmt-vlan-id> and press Enter.

13.  Select IPv4 Configuration and press Enter.

14.  Select the Set static IPv4 address and network configuration option by using the space bar.

15.  Enter the IP address for managing the first ESXi host.

16.  Enter the subnet mask for the first ESXi host.

17.  Enter the default gateway for the first ESXi host.

18.  Press Enter to accept the changes to the IP configuration.

19.  Select the IPv6 Configuration option and press Enter.

20.  Using the spacebar, select Disable IPv6 (restart required) and press Enter.

21.  Select the DNS Configuration option and press Enter.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Because the IP address is assigned manually, the DNS information must also be entered manually.

22.  Enter the IP address of the primary DNS server.

23.  Optional: Enter the IP address of the secondary DNS server.

24.  Enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) for the first ESXi host.

25.  Press Enter to accept the changes to the DNS configuration.

26.  Press Esc to exit the Configure Management Network submenu.

27.  Select Test Management Network to verify that the management network is set up correctly and press Enter.

28.  Press Enter to run the test, press Enter again once the test has completed, review environment if there is a failure.

29.  Re-select the Configure Management Network and press Enter.

30.  Select the IPv6 Configuration option and press Enter.

31.  Using the spacebar, select Disable IPv6 (restart required) and press Enter.

32.  Press Esc to exit the Configure Management Network submenu.

33.  Press Y to confirm the changes and reboot the ESXi host.

34.  After the host reboots, log back into the VMware ESXi console interface.

35.  Select Troubleshooting Options.

36.  Select Enable ESXi Shell and press Enter.

37.  Select Enable SSH and press Enter.

38.  Press <esc> to return to the main ESXi console menu.

**Reset VMware ESXi Host VMkernel Port vmk0 MAC Address (Optional)**

**ESXi Host VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

By default the MAC address of the management VMkernel port vmk0 is the same as the MAC address of the Ethernet port it is place on.  If the ESXi host’s boot LUN is remapped to a different server with different MAC addresses, a MAC address conflict will exist because vmk0 will retain the assigned MAC address.  To reset the MAC address of vmk0 to a random VMware-assigned MAC address, complete the following steps:

1.    From the ESXi console menu main screen, type Ctrl-Alt-F1 to access the VMware console command line interface.  In the UCSM KVM, Ctrl-Alt-F1 appears in the list of Static Macros.

2.    Log in as root.

3.    Type “esxcfg-vmknic –l” to get a detailed listing of interface vmk0.  vmk0 should be a part of the “Management Network” port group. Note the IP address and netmask of vmk0.

4.    To remove vmk0, type “esxcfg-vmknic –d “Management Network””.

5.    To re-add vmk0 with a random MAC address, type “esxcfg-vmknic –a –i <vmk0-ip> -n <vmk0-netmask> “Management Network””.

6.    Verify vmk0 has been re-added with a random MAC address by typing “esxcfg-vmknic –l”.

7.    Type “exit” to log out of the command line interface.

8.    Type Ctrl-Alt-F2 to return to the ESXi console menu interface.

**Log in to VMware ESXi Hosts by Using VMware Host Client**

**ESXi Host VM-Host-Infra-01**

To log in to the VM-Host-Infra-01  ESXi host by using the VMware Host Client, complete the following steps:

1.    Open a web browser on the management workstation and navigate to the VM-Host-Infra-01 management IP address.

2.    Click Open the VMware Host Client.

3.    Enter root for the user name.

4.    Enter the root password.

5.    Click Login to connect.

6.    Repeat this process to log into VM-Host-Infra-02 in a separate browser tab or window.

**Set Up VMkernel Ports and Virtual Switch**

**ESXi Host VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

To set up the VMkernel ports and the virtual switches on the ESXi hosts, complete the following steps:

1.    From the Host Client, select Networking on the left.

2.    In the center pane, select the Virtual switches tab.

3.    Select vSwitch0.

4.    Select Edit settings.

5.    Change the MTU to 9000.

6.    Click Save.

7.     On the left, select Networking, then select the Port groups tab.

8.    In the center pane, right-click VM Network and select Remove.

9.    Click Remove to complete removing the port group.

10.  In the center pane, select Add port group.

11.  Name the port group IB-MGMT Network and enter <ib-mgmt-vlan-id> in the VLAN ID field, and make sure Virtual switch vSwitch0 is selected.

12.  Click Add to finalize the edits for the IB-MGMT Network.

13.  At the top, select the VMkernel NICs tab.

14.  Click Add VMkernel NIC.

15.  For New port group, enter VMkernel-vMotion.

16.  For Virtual switch, select vSwitch0.

17.  Enter <vmotion-vlan-id> for the VLAN ID.

18.  Change the MTU to 9000.

19.  Select Static IPv4 settings and expand IPv4 settings.

20.  Enter the ESXi host vMotion IP address and netmask.

21.  Select the vMotion stack for TCP/IP stack.

22.  Click Create.

23.  Click Add VMkernel NIC.

24.  For New port group, enter VMkernel-Infra-NFS

25.  For Virtual switch, select vSwitch0.

26.  Enter <infra-nfs-vlan-id> for the VLAN ID

27.  Change the MTU to 9000.

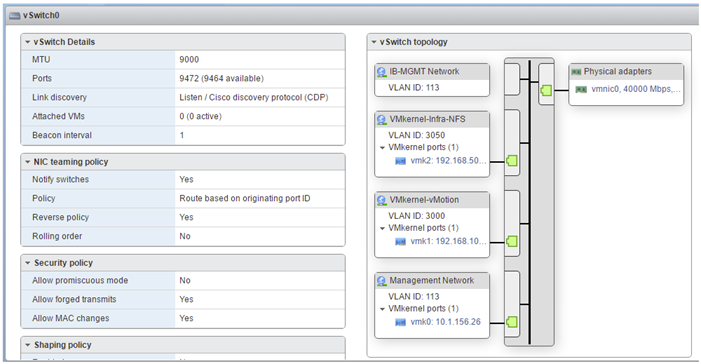
28.  Select Static IPv4 settings and expand IPv4 settings.

29.  Enter the ESXi host Infrastructure NFS IP address and netmask.

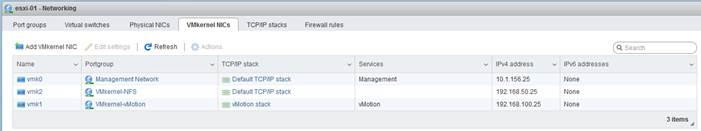
30.  Do not select any of the Services.

31.  Click Create.

32.  Select the Virtual Switches tab, then vSwitch0. The properties for vSwitch0 VMkernel NICs should be similar to the following example:

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_61.png)

33.  Select the VMkernel NICs tab to confirm configured virtual adapters. The adapters listed should be similar to the following example:

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_62.jpg)

**Install VMware Drivers for the Cisco Virtual Interface Card (VIC)**

Download and extract the offline bundle for the following VMware VIC Driver to the Management workstation:

[fnic Driver version 1.6.0.28](https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=DT-ESXI60-CISCO-FNIC-16028&productId=491)

**ESXi Hosts VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

To install VMware VIC Drivers on the ESXi host VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02, complete the following steps:

1.    From each Host Client, select Storage on the left.

2.    Right-click datastore1 and select Browse.

3.    In the Datastore browser, click Upload.

4.    Navigate to the saved location for the downloaded VIC drivers and select fnic\_driver\_1.6.0.28-offline\_bundle-4179603.zip.

5.    Click Open to upload the file to datastore1.

6.    Make sure the file has been uploaded to both ESXi hosts.

7.    Connect to each ESXi host through ssh from a shell connection or putty terminal.

8.    Login as root with the root password.

9.    Run the following command on each host:

esxcli software vib update -d /vmfs/volumes/datastore1/fnic\_driver\_1.6.0.28-offline\_bundle-4179603.zip

10.  Reboot each host by typing reboot from the SSL interface after both commands have been run.

11.  Log into the Host Client on each host once reboot is complete.

**Mount Required Datastores**

**ESXi Hosts VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

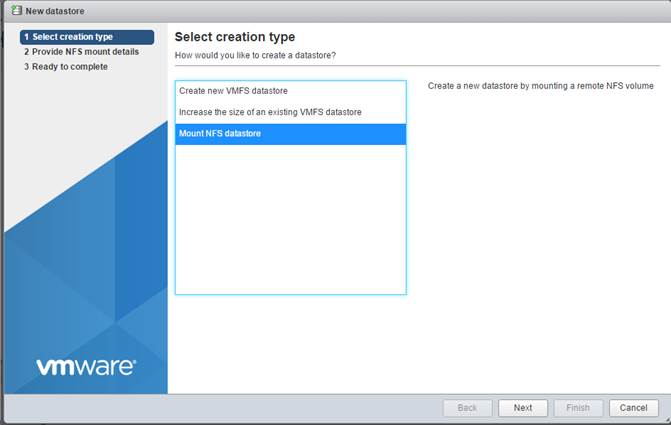
To mount the required datastores, complete the following steps on each ESXi host:

1.    From the Host Client, select Storage on the left.

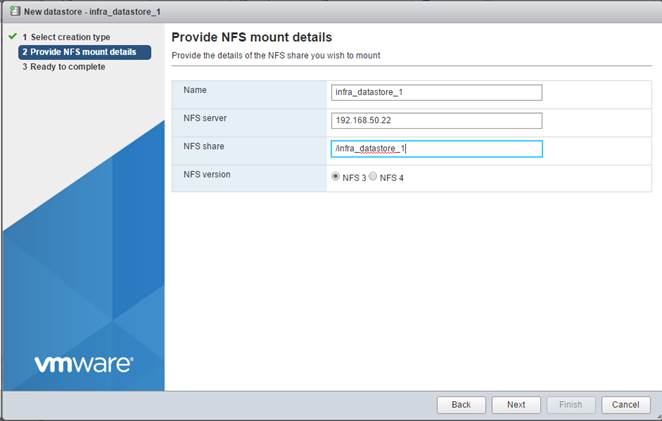
2.    In the center pane, select Datastores.

3.    In the center pane, select New Datastore to add a new datastore.

4.    In the New datastore popup, select Mount NFS datastore and click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_63.jpg)

5.    Input infra\_datastore\_1 for the datastore name.  Input the IP address for the nfs\_lif01 LIF for the NFS server.  Input /infra\_datastore\_1 for the NFS share.  Leave the NFS version set at NFS 3.  Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_64.jpg)

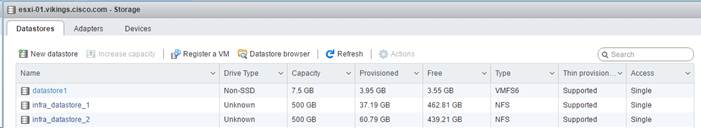
6.    Click Finish. The datastore should now appear in the datastore list.

7.    In the center pane, select New Datastore to add a new datastore.

8.    In the New datastore popup, select Mount NFS datastore and click Next.

9.    Input infra\_datastore\_2 for the datastore name.  Input the IP address for the nfs\_lif02 LIF for the NFS server.  Input /infra\_datastore\_2 for the NFS share.  Leave the NFS version set at NFS 3.  Click Next.

10.  Click Finish. The datastore should now appear in the datastore list.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_65.jpg)

11.  Mount both datastores on both ESXi hosts.

**Configure NTP on ESXi Hosts**

**ESXi Hosts VM-Host-Infra-01 and VM-Host-Infra-02**

To configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) on the ESXi hosts, complete the following steps on each host:

1.    From the Host Client, select Manage on the left.

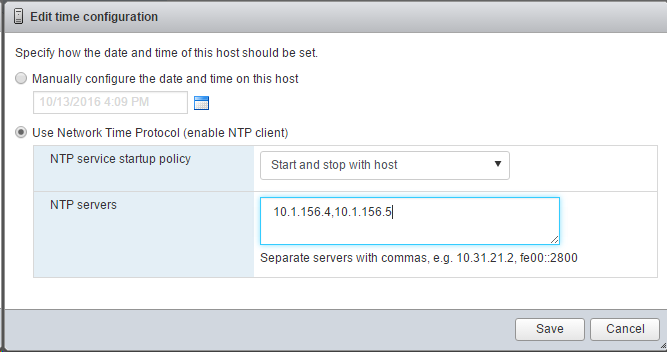
2.    In the center pane, select the Time & date tab.

3.    Click Edit settings.

4.    Make sure Use Network Time Protocol (enable NTP client) is selected.

5.    Use the pulldown to select Start and stop with host.

6.    Enter the two Nexus switch NTP addresses in the NTP servers box separated by a comma.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_66.png)

7.    Click Save to save the configuration changes.

8.    Select Actions > NTP service > Start.

9.    Verify that NTP service is now running and the clock is now set to approximately the correct time.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The NTP server time may vary slightly from the host time.

**VMware vCenter 6.5**

The procedures in the following subsections provide detailed instructions for installing the VMware vCenter 6.5 Server Appliance in an environment. After the procedures are completed, a VMware vCenter Server will be configured.

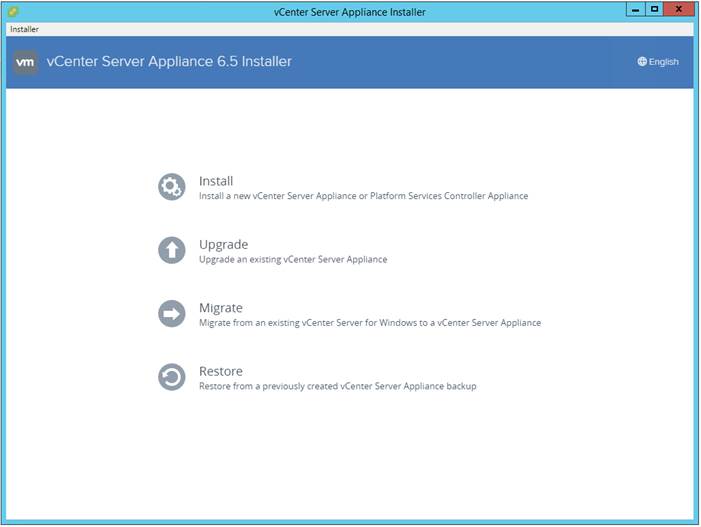
**Building the VMware vCenter Server Appliance**

The VCSA deployment consists of 2 stages: install and configuration. To build the VMware vCenter virtual machine, complete the following steps:

1.    Locate and copy the VMware-VCSA-all-6.5.0-4944578.iso file to the desktop of the management workstation.  This ISO is for the VMware vSphere 6.5 vCenter Server Appliance.

2.    Using ISO mounting software, mount the ISO image as a disk on the management workstation. (For example, with the Mount command in Windows Server 2012).

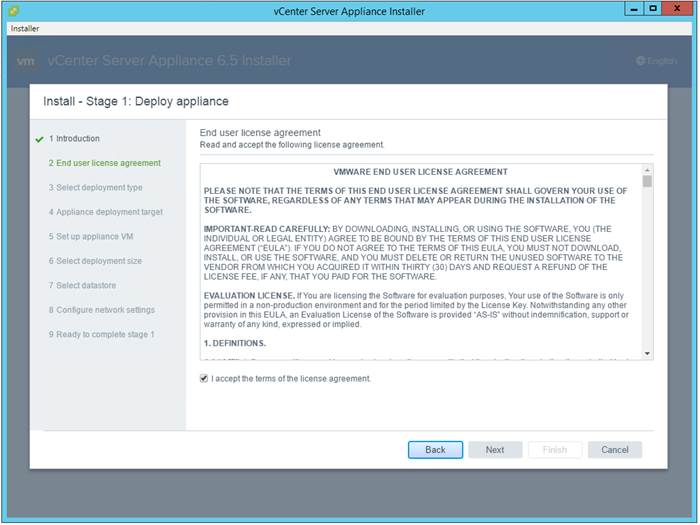
3.    In the mounted disk directory, navigate to the vcsa-ui-installer > win32 directory and double-click installer.exe. The vCenter Server Appliance Installer wizard appear

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_67.jpg)

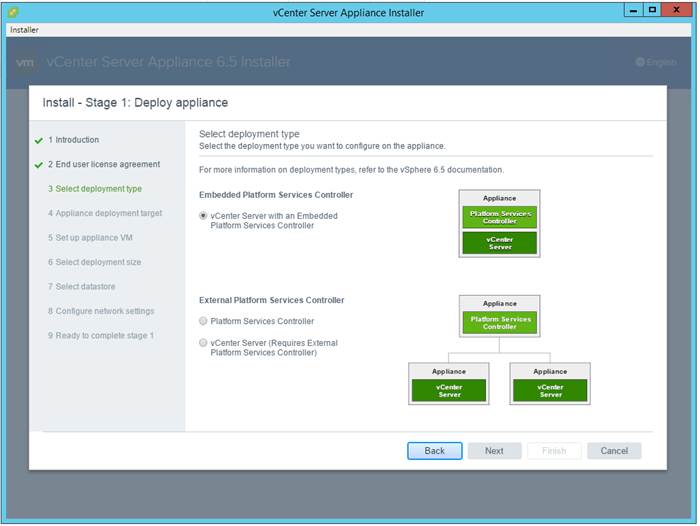
4.    Click Install to start the vCenter Server Appliance deployment wizard.

5.    Click Next in the Introduction section.

6.    Read and accept the license agreement and click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_68.jpg)

7.    In the “Select deployment type” section, select Embedded Platform Services Controller.

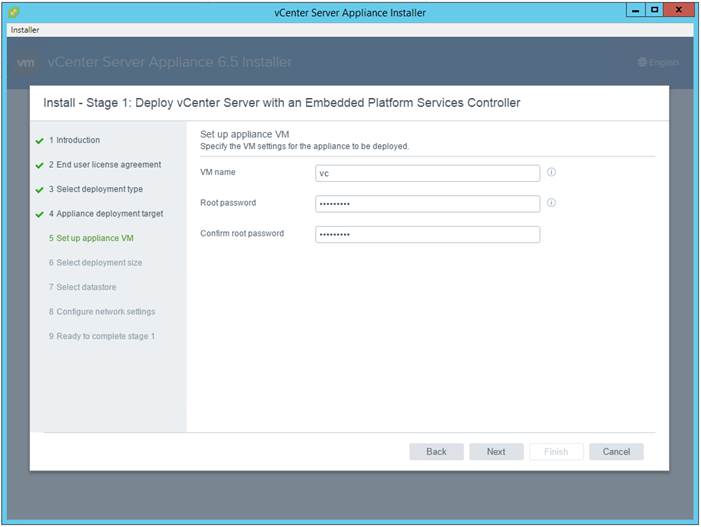
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_69.jpg)

8.    In the “Appliance deployment target”, enter the ESXi host name or IP address, User name and Password.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_70.jpg)

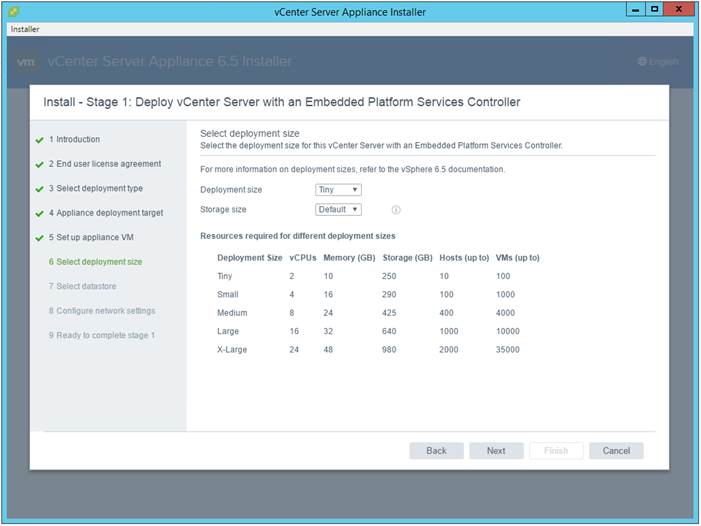
9.    Click Yes to accept the certificate.

10.  Enter the Appliance name and password details in the “Set up appliance VM” section. Click Next.

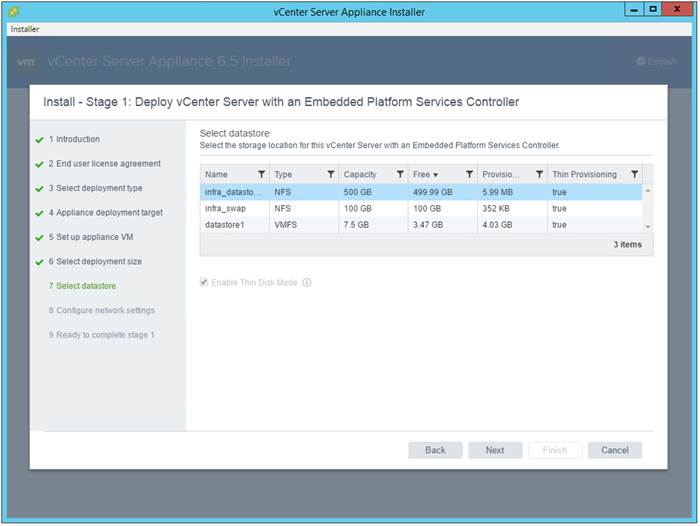
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_71.jpg)

11.  In the “Select deployment size” section, Select the deployment size and Storage size. For example, “Tiny.”

12.  Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_72.jpg)

13.  Select the infra\_datastore\_1. Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_73.jpg)

14.  In the “Network Settings” section, configure the below settings:

a.     Choose a Network: IB-MGMT Network

b.    IP version: IPV4

c.     IP assignment: static

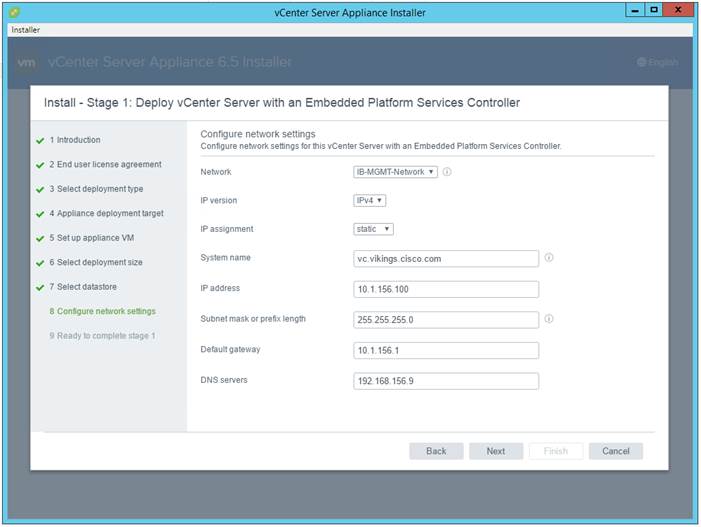
d.    System name: <vcenter-fqdn>

e.    IP address: <vcenter-ip>

f.      Subnet mask or prefix length: <vcenter-subnet-mask>

g.    Default gateway: <vcenter-gateway>

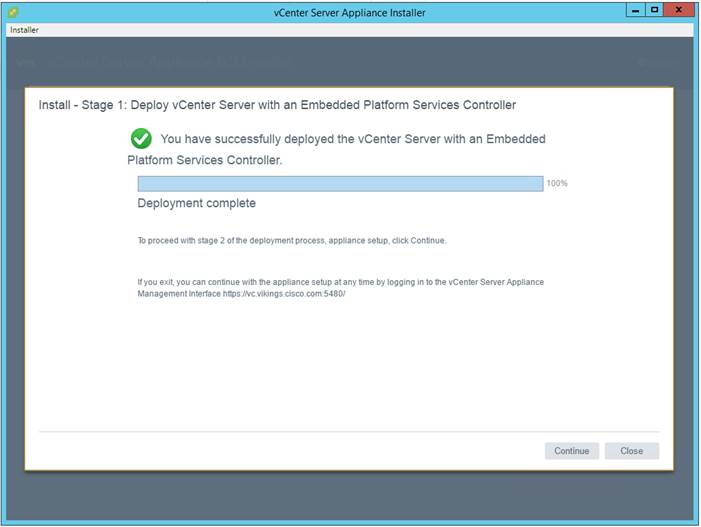
h.     DNS Servers: <dns-server>

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_74.jpg)

15.  Click Next.

16.  Review all values and click Finish to complete the installation.

17.  The vCenter appliance installation will take a few minutes to complete.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_75.jpg)

18.  Click Continue to proceed with stage 2 configuration.

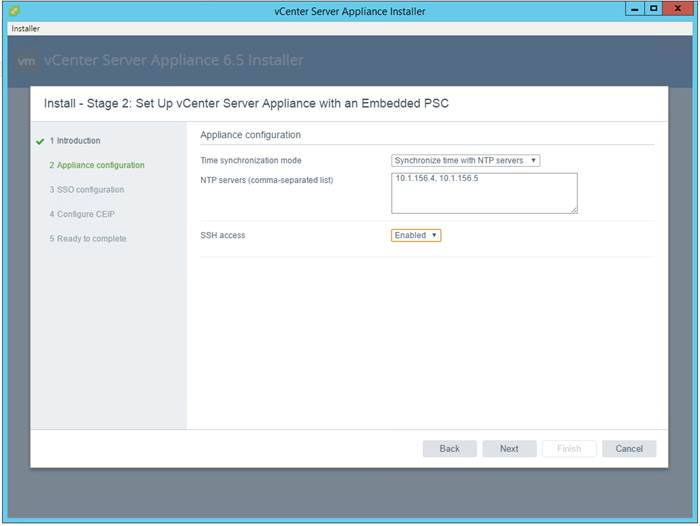
19.  Click Next.

20.  In the Appliance Configuration, configure the below settings:

a.     Time Synchronization Mode: Synchronize time with NTP servers.

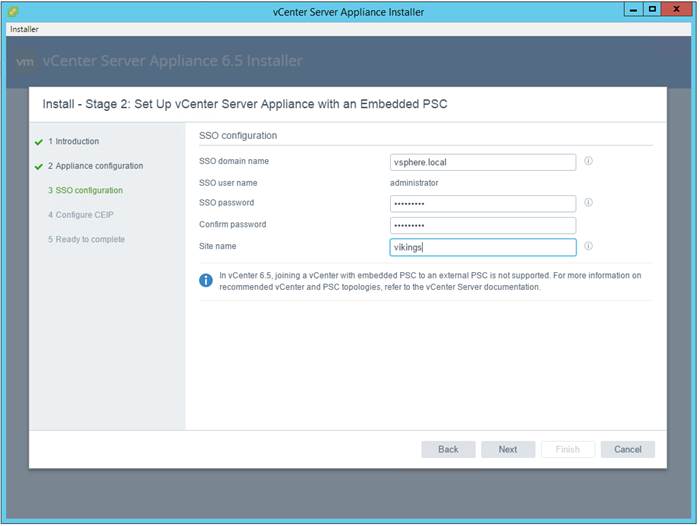
b.    NTP Servers: <ntp\_server\_ip>

c.     SSH access: Enabled.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_76.jpg)

21.  Click Next.

22.  Complete the SSO configuration as show below:

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_77.jpg)

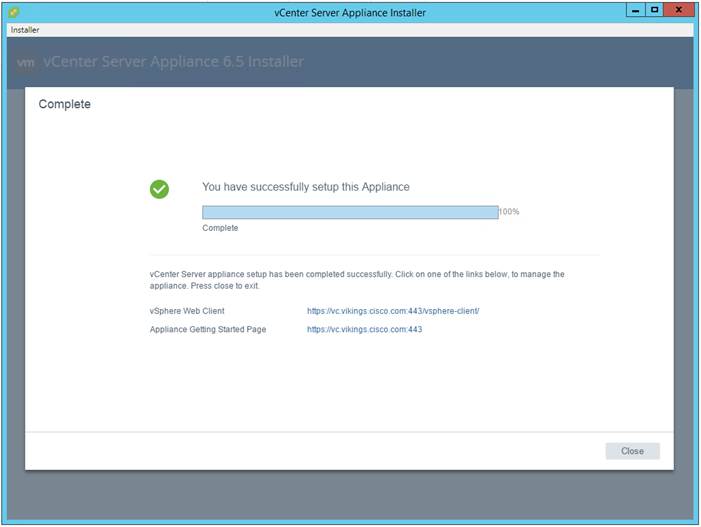
23.  Click Next.

24.  If needed, select Join the VMware’s Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP).

25.  Click Next.

26.  Review the configuration and click Finish.

27.  Click OK.

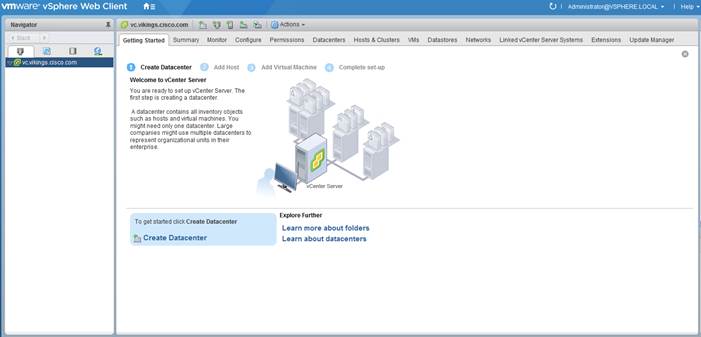
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_78.jpg)

**Setting Up VMware vCenter Server**

1.    Using a web browser, navigate to https://<vcenter-ip>/vsphere-client

2.    Click Download Enhanced Authentication Plugin. Install the same by double clicking the downloaded file.

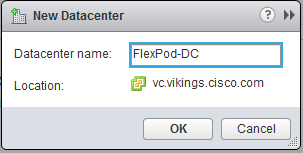
3.    Log in using the Single Sign-On username and password created during the vCenter installation.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_79.jpg)

4.    Click “Create Datacenter” in the center pane.

5.    Type “FlexPod-DC” in the Datacenter name field.

6.    Click OK.

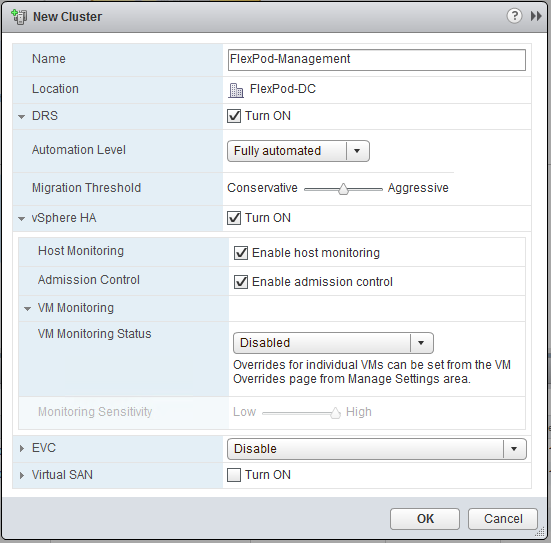
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_80.png)

7.    Right-click the data center FlexPod-DC in the list in the center pane. Click New Cluster.

8.    Name the cluster FlexPod-Management.

9.    Check the box to turn on DRS. Leave the default values.

10.  Check the box to turn on vSphere HA. Leave the default values.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_81.png)

11.  Click OK to create the new cluster.

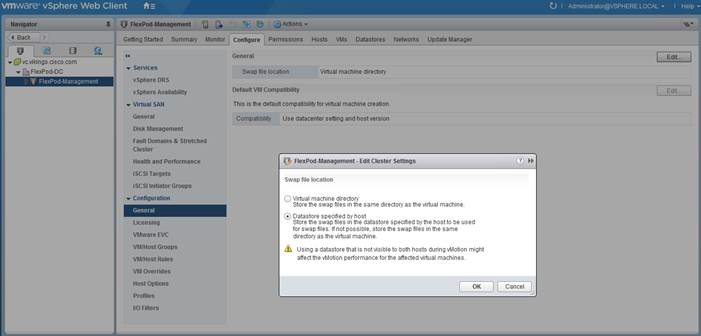
12.  On the left pane, double click the “FlexPod-DC”.

13.  Click Clusters.

14.  Under the Clusters pane, right-click FlexPod-Management and select Settings.

15.  Select Configuration > General in the list on the left and select Edit to the right of General.

16.  Select Datastore specified by host and click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_82.jpg)

17.  On the left, right-click FlexPod-Management and click Add Host.

18.  In the Host field, enter either the IP address or the FQDN name of one of the VMware ESXi hosts. Click Next.

19.  Type root as the user name and the root password. Click Next to continue.

20.  Click Yes to accept the certificate.

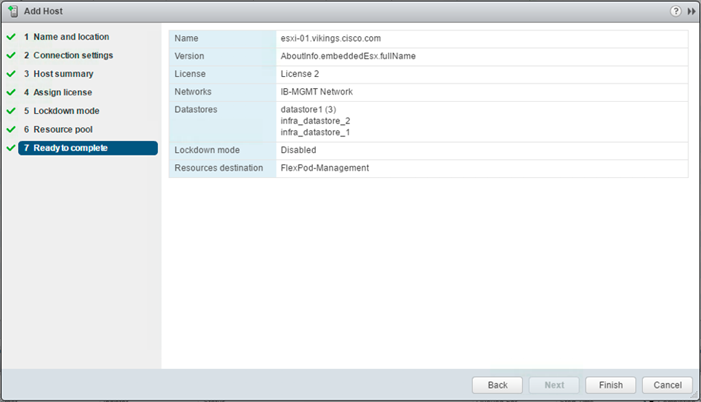
21.  Review the host details and click Next to continue.

22.  Assign a license or leave in evaluation mode and click Next to continue.

23.  Click Next to continue.

24.  Click Next to continue.

25.  Review the configuration parameters and click Finish to add the host.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_83.png)

26.  Repeat the steps 17 to 25 to add the remaining VMware ESXi hosts to the cluster.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Two VMware ESXi hosts will be added to the cluster.

Add AD User Authentication to vCenter (Optional)

If an AD Infrastructure is set up in this FlexPod environment, you can setup in AD and authenticate from vCenter.

1.    In the AD Infrastructure, using the Active Directory Users and Computers tool, setup a Domain Administrator user with a user name such as flexadmin (FlexPod Admin).

2.    Connect to https://<vcenter-ip>, and select Log in to vSphere Web Client.

3.    Log in as [Administrator@vsphere.local](mailto:Administrator@vsphere.local) (or the SSO user set up in vCenter installation) with the corresponding password.

4.    Navigate to Home. In the center pane, select System Configuration under Administration.

5.    On the left, select Nodes and under Nodes select the vCenter.

6.    In the center pane, select the manage tab, and within the Settings select Active Directory and click Join.

7.    Fill in the AD domain name, the Administrator user, and the domain Administrator password.  Click OK.

8.    On the left, right-click the vCenter and select Reboot.

9.    Input a reboot reason and click OK.  The reboot will take approximately 10 minutes for full vCenter initialization.

10.  Log back into the vCenter Web Client.

11.  In the center pane, select System Configuration under Administration.

12.  On the left, select Nodes and under Nodes select the vCenter.

13.  In the center pane under the Manage tab, select Active Directory.  Make sure your Active Directory Domain is listed.

14.  Navigate back to the vCenter Home.

15.  In the center pane under Administration, select Roles.

16.  On the left under Single Sign-On, select Configuration.

17.  In the center pane, select the Identity Sources tab.

18.  Click the green + sign to add an Identity Source.

19.  Select the Active Directory (Integrated Windows Authentication) Identity source type.

20.  Your AD domain name should be filled in.  Leave Use machine account selected and click OK.

21.  Your AD domain should now appear in the Identity Sources list.

22.  On the left, under Single Sign-On, select Users and Groups.

23.  In the center pane, select your AD domain for the Domain.

24.  Make sure the FlexPod Admin user setup in step 1 appears in the list.

25.  On the left under Administration, select Global Permissions.

26.  Select the Manage tab, and click the green + sign to add a User or Group.

27.  In the Global Permission Root - Add Permission window, click Add.

28.  In the Select Users/Groups window, select your AD Domain.

29.  Under Users and Groups, select either the FlexPod Admin user or the Domain Admins group.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The FlexPod Admin user was created in the Domain Admins group.  The selection here depends on whether the FlexPod Admin user will be the only user used in this FlexPod or you would like to add other users later.  By selecting the Domain Admins group, any user placed in that group in the AD domain will be able to login to vCenter as an Administrator.

30.  Click Add, then click Check names to verify correctness of the names. Click OK to acknowledge the correctness of the names.

31.  Click OK to add the selected User or Group.

32.  Verify the added User or Group is listed under Users and Groups and the Administrator role is assigned.

33.  Click OK.

34.  Log out and log back into the vCenter Web Client as the FlexPod Admin user.  You will need to add the domain name to the user, for example, flexadmin@domain.

**Cisco UCS Manager Plug-in for VMware vSphere Web Client**

The Cisco UCS Manager Plug-in for VMware vSphere Web Client allows administration of UCS domains through the VMware’s vCenter administrative interface.  The capabilities of the plug-in include:

         View Cisco UCS physical hierarchy

         View inventory, installed firmware, faults, power and temperature statistics

         Map the ESXi host to the physical server

         Manage firmware for Cisco UCS B and C series servers

         View VIF paths for servers

         Launch the Cisco UCS Manager GUI

         Launch the KVM consoles of UCS servers

         Switch the existing state of the locator LEDs

The installation is only valid for VMware vCenter 5.5 or higher, and will require revisions of .NET Framework 4.5 and VMware PowerCLI 5.1 or greater.

**Cisco UCS Manager Plug-in Installation**

To begin the plug-in installation on a Windows system that meets the previously stated requirements, complete the following steps:

1.    Download the plugin and registration tool from: <https://software.cisco.com/download/release.html?mdfid=286282669&reltype=latest&relind=AVAILABLE&dwnld=true&softwareid=286282010&catid=282558030&rellifecycle=&atcFlag=N&release=2.0.1&dwldImageGuid=5963DCD457E74C173F61512F00BB6FE78C5D8B72>

2.    Place the downloaded ucs-vcplugin-2.0.1.zip file onto the web server used for hosting the ONTAP software and VMware ESXi ISO.

3.    Unzip the Cisco\_UCS\_Plugin\_Registration\_Tool\_1\_1\_3.zip and open the executable file within it.

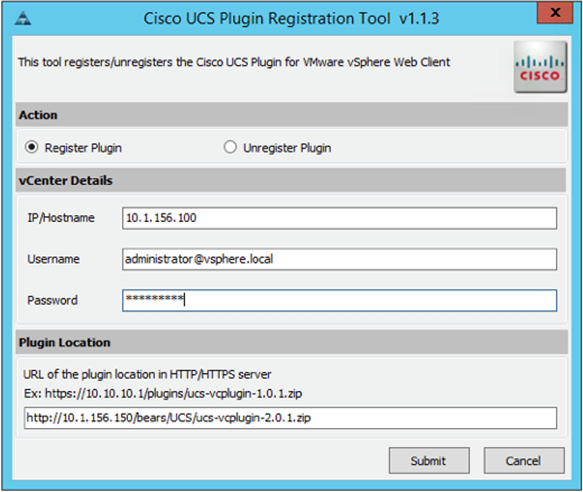
4.    Leave Register Plugin selected for the Action, and fill in:

a.     IP/Hostname

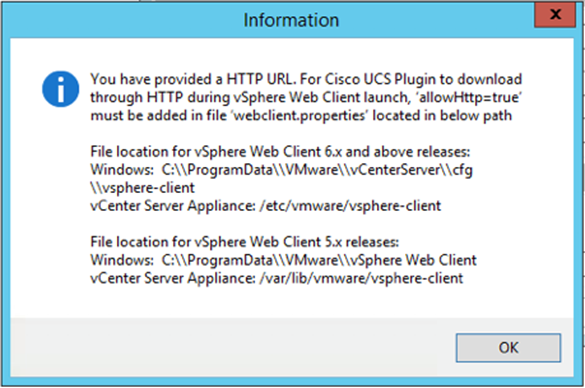
b.    Username

c.     Password

d.    URL that plugin has been uploaded to

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_84.png)

5.    A pop-up will appear explaining that ‘allowHttp=true’ will need to be added to the webclient.properties file on the VCSA in the /etc/vmware/vsphere-client directory.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_85.png)

6.    Take care of this issue after the plugin has been registered, click OK to close the Information dialogue box.

7.    Click Submit to register the plugin with the vCenter Server Appliance.

8.    To resolve the change needed for the HTTP download of the vSphere Web Client launch, connect to the VCSA with ssh using the root account and type:

echo ‘allowHttp=true’ >> /etc/vmware/vsphere-client/webclient.properties

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This will add “allowHttp=true” to the end of the webclient.properties file.  Make sure to use two greater than symbols “>>” to append to the end of the configuration file, a single greater than symbol will replace the entire pre-existing file with what has been sent with the echo command.

9.    Reboot the VCSA.

**FlexPod UCS Domain Registration**

Registration of the FlexPod UCS Domain can now be performed. The account used will correlate to the permissions allowed to the plugin, admin will be used in our example, but a read only account could be used with the plugin if that was appropriate for the environment.

To register the UCS Domain, complete the following steps:

1.    Opening up the vSphere Web Client.

2.    Select the Home from the Navigator or pull-down options, and double click the Cisco UCS icon appearing in the Administration section.

3.    Click the Register button and provide the following options in the Register UCS Domain dialogue box that appears:

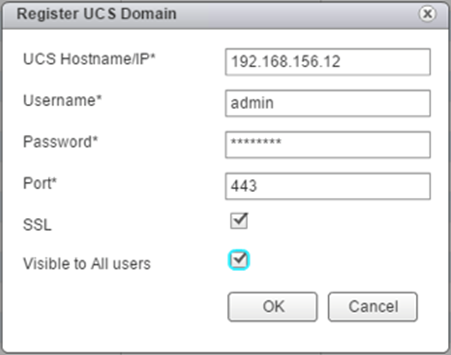
a.     UCS Hostname/IP

b.    Username

c.     Password

d.    Port (if different than 443)

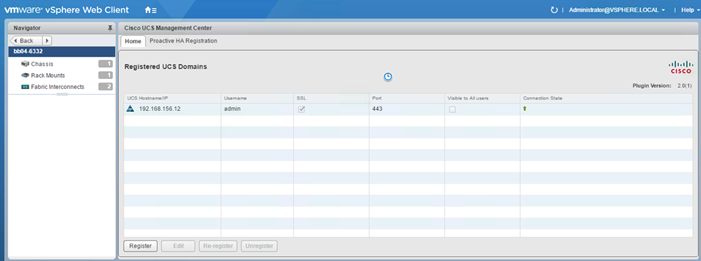
e.    Leave SSL selected and click the Visible to All users option

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_86.png)

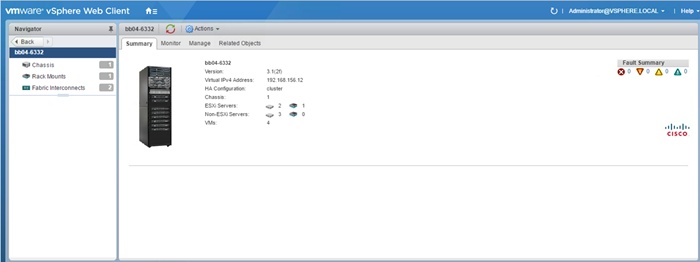
4.    Click OK to register the UCS Domain.

**Using the Cisco UCS vCenter Plugin**

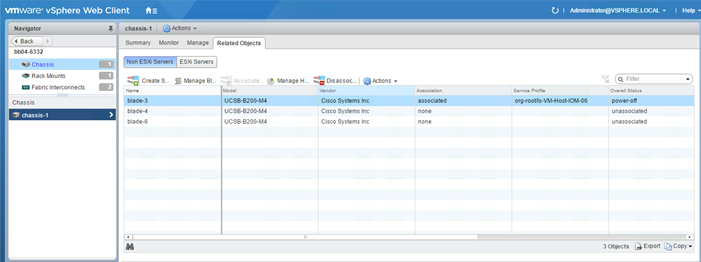
The plugin can now enable the functions described at the start of this section by double-clicking the registered UCS Domain:

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_87.png)

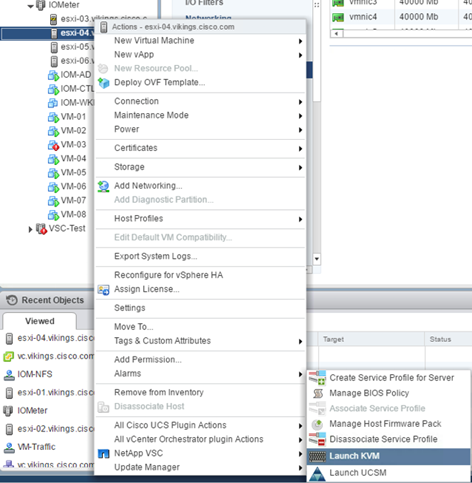
This will pull up a view of the components associated to the domain:

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_88.png)

Selecting within the chassis or rack mounts will provide a list of ESXi or non-ESXi servers to perform operations on the following:

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_89.png)

In addition to viewing and working within objects shown in the UCS Plugin’s view of the UCS Domain, direct access of UCS functions provided by the plugin can be selected within the pulldown options of hosts registered to vCenter:

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_90.png)

For full installation instructions and usage information, please refer to the Cisco UCS Manager Plug-in for VMware vSphere Web Client User Guide at: <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/sw/vmware_tools/vCenter/vCenter_Plugin_User_Guide/2x/b_vCenter_2x.html>

**FlexPod VMware vSphere Distributed Switch (vDS)**

This section provides detailed procedures for installing the VMware vDS on the FlexPod ESXi Management Hosts.

In the Cisco UCS setup section of this document one set of vNICs (Infra-A and B) was setup.  The vmnic ports associated with the Infra-A and B vNICs will be migrated to VMware vDS in this procedure. The critical infrastructure VLAN interfaces and vMotion interfaces will be placed on the vDS.

An IB-Mgmt VLAN and a VM-Traffic VLAN port group will be added to the vDS.  Any additional VLAN-based port groups added to the vDS would need to have the corresponding VLANs added to the Cisco UCS LAN cloud, to the Cisco UCS Infra-A and B vNIC templates, and to the Cisco Nexus 9K switches and vPC peer-link interfaces on the switches.

**Configure the VMware vDS in vCenter**

**VMware vSphere Web Client**

To configure the vDS, complete the following steps:

1.    After logging into the VMware vSphere Web Client, select Networking under the Home tab.

2.    Right-click the FlexPod-DC datacenter and select Distributed Switch > New Distributed Switch.

3.    Give the Distributed Switch a descriptive name and click Next.

4.    Make sure Distributed switch: 6.5.0 is selected and click Next.

5.    Change the Number of uplinks to 2. If VMware Network I/O Control is to be used for Quality of Service, leave Network I/O Control Enabled.  Otherwise, Disable Network I/O Control. Enter VM-Traffic for the Port group name. Click Next.

6.    Review the information and click Finish to complete creating the vDS.

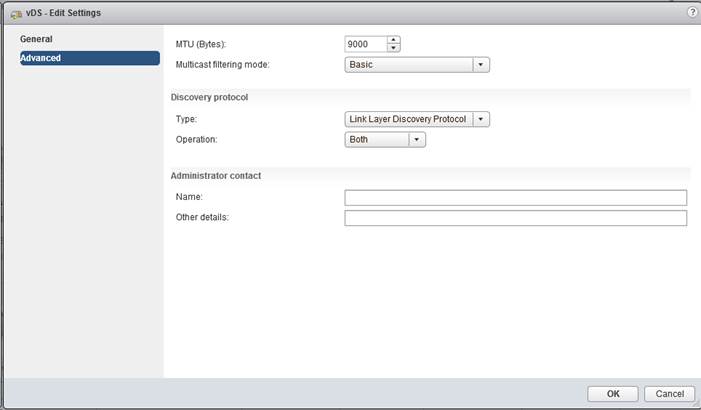
7.    On the left, expand the FlexPod-DC datacenter and the newly created vDS.  Select the newly created vDS.

8.    Select the VM-Traffic port group.  In the center pane, select the Edit distributed port group settings icon. The Edit button can be used to change the number of ports in the port group to a number larger than the default of 8.  All of the other properties of the port group can also be changed under Edit.

9.    Select the vDS on the left. Click the Edit distributed switch settings icon on the right.

10.  On the left in the Edit Settings window, select Advanced.

11.  Change the MTU to 9000.  The Discovery Protocol can optionally be changed to Link Layer Discovery Protocol and the Operation to Both.  Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_91.jpg)

12.  Three port groups will be created for infrastructure use, first being for the management vmkernel.  On the left, right-click the vDS, select Distributed Port Group, and select New Distributed Port Group… within the pull-down options of Distributed Port Group.

13.  For the first port group used for vMotion on the left, right-click the vDS, select Distributed Port Group, and select New Distributed Port Group… within the pull-down options of Distributed Port Group.

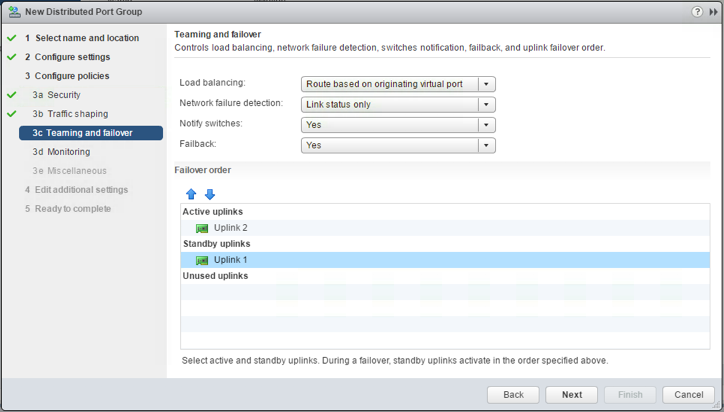
14.  Enter vMotion as the name and click Next.

15.  Set the VLAN type to VLAN, enter the VLAN used for vMotion, click the Customize default policies configuration check box, and click Next.

16.  Leave the Security options set to Reject and click Next.

17.  Leave the Ingress and Egress traffic shaping options as Disabled, and click Next.

18.  Select Uplink 1 from the list of Active uplinks, and click the down arrow icon twice to place Uplink 1 in the list of Standby uplinks.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_92.png)

19.  Click Next.

20.  Leave Netflow Disabled and click Next.

21.  Leave Block all ports set as No and click Next.

22.  Leave the additional settings dialogue options as they are shown and click Next.

23.  Confirm the options and click Finish to create the port group.

24.  For the second port group used for Infrastructure In-Band Management on the left, right-click the vDS, select Distributed Port Group, and select New Distributed Port Group… within the pull-down options of Distributed Port Group.

25.  Enter IB-MGMT as the name and click Next.

26.  Set the VLAN type to VLAN, enter the VLAN used for In-Band Management, click the Customize default policies configuration check box, and click Next.

27.  Leave the Security options set to Reject and click Next.

28.  Leave the Ingress and Egress traffic shaping options as Disabled, and click Next.

29.  Select Uplink 2 from the list of Active uplinks, and click the down arrow icon twice to place Uplink 2 in the list of Standby uplinks. This step is pinning In-Band Management traffic to UCS Fabric A.

30.  Click Next.

31.  Leave Netflow Disabled and click Next.

32.  Leave Block all ports set as No and click Next.

33.  Leave the additional settings dialogue options as they are shown and click Next.

34.  Confirm the options and click Finish to create the port group.

35.  Repeating this same procedure, a second time for the Infrastructure NFS vmkernel.  On the left, right-click the vDS, select Distributed Port Group, and select New Distributed Port Group… within the pull-down options of Distributed Port Group.

36.  Enter Infra-NFS as the name and click Next.

37.  Set the VLAN type to VLAN, enter the VLAN used for NFS, and click Next.

38.  Click Finish to create the port group.

39.  On the left, right-click the vDS and select Add and Manage Hosts.

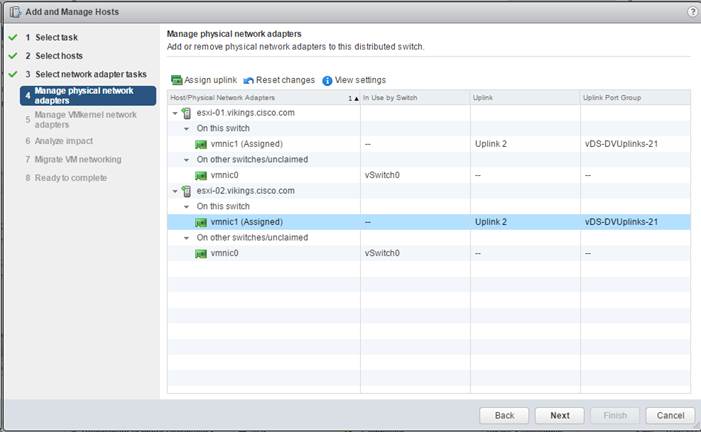
40.  Make sure Add hosts is selected and click Next.

41.  Click the green + sign to add hosts.  Select the two FlexPod Management hosts and click OK. Click Next.

42.  Leave Manage physical adapters and Manage VMkernel adapters selected. Select Migrate virtual machine networking and click Next.

43.  Select vmnic1 on the first host and click Assign uplink. Select Uplink 2 and click OK. Repeat this process to assign vmnic1(Uplink2) from both hosts to the vDS.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          It is important to assign vmnic1 (UCS Fabric B) to Uplink2 in the vDS.  This allows the port groups to be pinned to the appropriate fabric.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_93.jpg)

44.  Click Next.

45.  Select vmk0 on the first host and click Assign port group.

46.  Select the IB-MGMT destination port group and click OK.

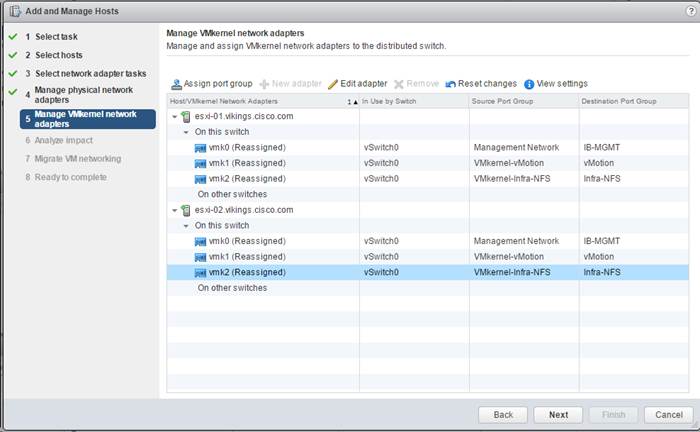
47.  Select vmk1 on the first host and click Assign port group.

48.  Select the vMotion destination port group and click OK.

49.  Select vmk2 on the first host and click Assign port group.

50.  Select the Infra-NFS destination port group and click OK.

51.  Repeat this process for the second ESXi host.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_94.jpg)

52.  Confirm the 3 VMkernel adapters on each host have valid Destination Port Groups and click Next.

53.  Click Next after confirming there is no impact detected in the Analyze impact screen.

54.  In the Migrate VM networking window, expand the vCenter VM and select Network adapter 1.

55.  Click Assign port group, select the IB-MGMT port group and click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_95.jpg)

56.  Click Next.

57.  Click Finish to complete adding the two ESXi hosts to the vDS.

58.  Select Hosts and Clusters and select ESXi Host 1.

59.  Under the Configure tab, in the pane on the left, select Virtual switches.

60.  In the center pane under Virtual switches, select vSwitch0.

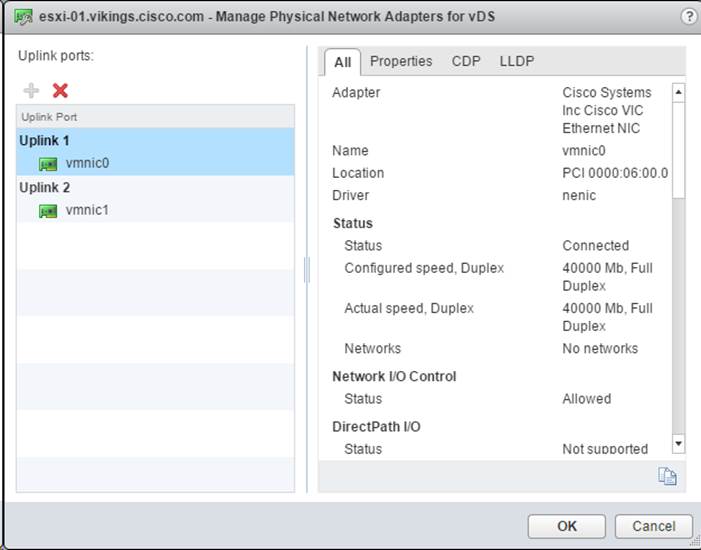
61.  Under Virtual switches, select the red X icon to delete vSwitch0. Click Yes to confirm.

62.  Under Virtual switches, select the vDS.

63.  Under Virtual switches, select the third icon to Manage the physical network adapters connected to the virtual switch.

64.  Click the green + icon to add an uplink.

65.  Make sure vmnic0 and Uplink 1 are selected and click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_96.jpg)

66.  Click OK to complete adding the adapter to the vDS on the host.

67.  Repeat this process to add vmnic0 to the vDS on ESXi Host 2.

**FlexPod Management Tools Setup**

**NetApp Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1 Deployment Procedure**

This section describes the deployment procedures for the NetApp Virtual Storage Console (VSC).

**Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1 Pre-installation Considerations**

The following licenses are required for VSC on storage systems that run ONTAP 9.1:

         Protocol licenses (NFS)

         NetApp FlexClone® (for provisioning and cloning only)

         NetApp SnapRestore® (for backup and recovery)

         The NetApp SnapManager® Suite

**Install Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1**

To install the VSC 6.2.1P1 software, complete the following steps:

1.    Build a VSC VM with Windows Server 2012 R2, 4GB of RAM, two CPUs, and one virtual network interface in the IB-MGMT Network port group. The virtual network interface should be a VMXNET 3 adapter.

2.    Bring up the VM, install VMware Tools, assign the IP address and gateway in the IB-MGMT subnet, and join the machine to the Active Directory domain.

3.    Activate Adobe Flash Player in Windows Server 2012 R2 by installing Desktop Experience under the User Interfaces and Infrastructure Feature on the VM.

4.    Install all Windows updates on the VM.

5.    Log in to the VSC VM as the FlexPod Admin user using the VMware console.

6.    From the VMware console on the VSC VM, download the x64 version of [Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P](http://mysupport.netapp.com/NOW/download/software/vsc_win/6.2.1P1/)1 from the [NetApp Support](https://support.netapp.com/) site.

7.    Right-click the VSC-6.2.1P1-win64.exe file downloaded in step 6 and select Run as Administrator.

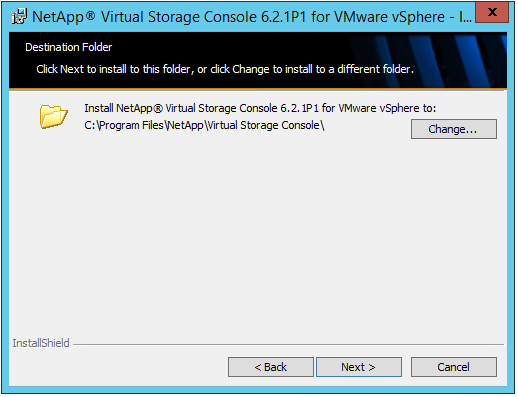
8.    Select the appropriate language and click OK.

9.    On the Installation wizard Welcome page, click Next.

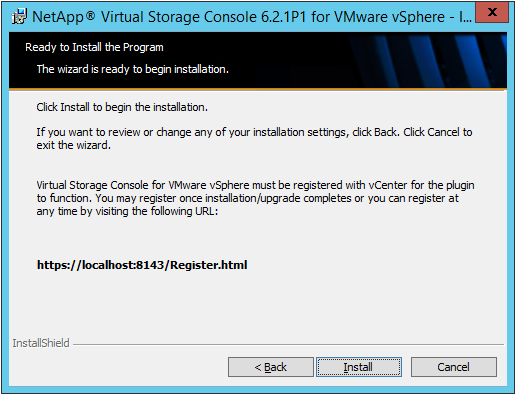
10.  Select the checkbox to accept the message and click Next.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The Backup and Recovery capability requires an additional license.

11.  Click Next to accept the default installation location.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_97.png)

12.  Click Install.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_98.png)

13.  Click Finish.

**Register Virtual Storage Console with vCenter Server**

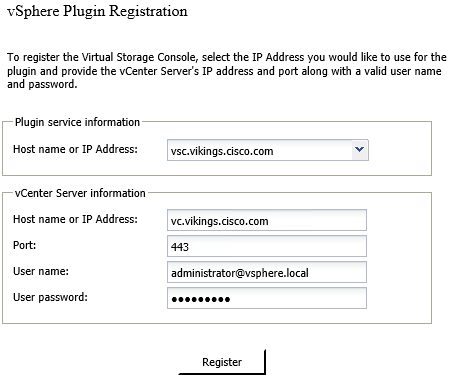
To register the VSC with the vCenter Server, complete the following steps:

1.    A browser window with the registration URL opens automatically when the installation phase is complete. If the URL does not open automatically, open <https://localhost:8143/Register.html> in Internet Explorer.

2.    Click Continue to This Website (Not Recommended).

3.    In the Plug-in Service Information section, select the local IP address of the VSC VM.

4.    In the vCenter Server Information section, enter the host name or IP address, the user name (FlexPod admin user or root), and the user password for the vCenter Server. Click Register to complete the registration.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_99.png)

5.    Upon successful registration, the storage controller discovery automatically begins.

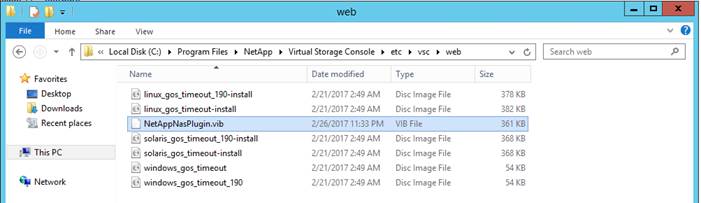
**Install NetApp NFS VAAI Plug-in**

To install the NetApp NFS VAAI Plug-in, complete the following steps:

1.    Download the NetApp NFS Plug-in 1.1.2 for VMware .vib file from the [NFS Plugin Download](http://mysupport.netapp.com/NOW/download/software/nfs_plugin_vaai_esxi6/1.1.2/)  on the VSC VM.

2.    Rename the downloaded file NetAppNasPlugin.vib.

3.    Move the file to the C:\Program Files\NetApp\Virtual Storage Console\etc\vsc\web folder.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_100.jpg)

**Discover and Add Storage Resources**

To discover storage resources for the Monitoring and Host Configuration capability and the Provisioning and Cloning capability, complete the following steps:

1.    Using the vSphere web client, log in to the vCenter Server as the FlexPod admin user. If the vSphere web client was previously opened, close it and then reopen it.

2.    In the Home screen, click the Home tab and click Virtual Storage Console.

3.    Select Storage Systems. Under the Objects tab, click Actions > Modify.

4.    In the IP Address/Hostname field, enter the storage cluster management IP. Enter admin for the user name and the admin password for password. Confirm Use TLS to Connect to This Storage System is selected. Click OK.

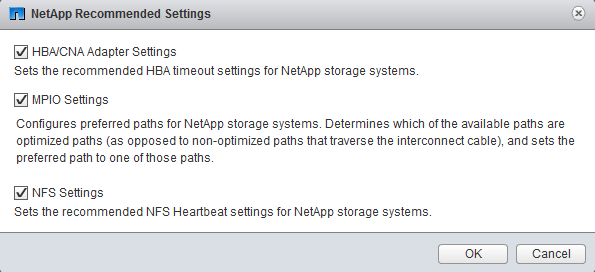
5.    Click OK to accept the controller privileges.

6.    Wait for the Storage Systems to update. You may need to click Refresh to complete this update.

**Optimal Storage Settings for ESXi Hosts**

VSC allows for the automated configuration of storage-related settings for all ESXi hosts that are connected to NetApp storage controllers. To use these settings, complete the following steps:

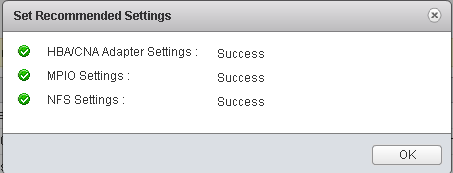
1.    From the Home screen, click on vCenter > Hosts and Clusters. For each ESXi host, right-click and select NetApp VSC > Set Recommended Values for these hosts.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_101.png)

2.    Check the settings that are to be applied to the selected vSphere hosts. Click OK to apply the settings.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This functionality sets values for HBAs and converged network adapters (CNAs), sets appropriate paths and path-selection plug-ins, and verifies appropriate settings for software-based I/O (NFS).

3.    Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_102.png)

4.    From the Home screen in the vSphere Web Client, select Virtual Storage Console.

5.    On the left under Virtual Storage Console, select NFS VAAI Tools.

6.    Make sure that NFS Plug-in for VMware VAII Version 1.1.2-3 is shown.

7.    Click Install on Host.

8.    Select both ESXi hosts and click Install.

9.    For each host for which settings were adjusted in the previous step, place the host in maintenance mode, reboot the host, and exit maintenance mode.

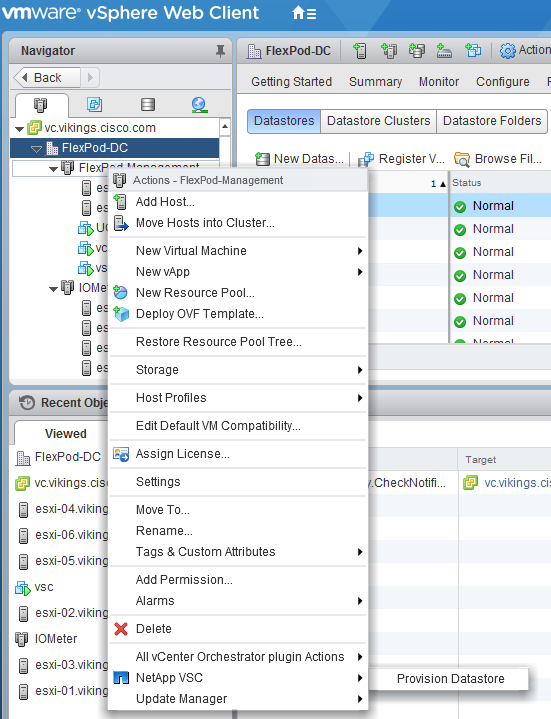
[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In testing a conflict has been identified between NetApp VSC, vSphere 6.5, and UCS servers containing the LSI Megaraid SAS Invader local disk controller.  If NetApp VSC cannot discover and set optimized settings for a server, the server most likely has the Megaraid SAS Invader controller installed.  This controller utilizes the lsi-mr3 ESXi vib.  A workaround for this problem is to disable the disk controller by running “esxcli system module set –-enabled=false –-module=lsi\_mr3” from an ESXi console or ssh prompt and then rebooting the host. When the host comes back up, the NetApp VSC functions should then work.

**Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1 Provisioning Datastores**

Using VSC, the administrator can provision NFS, FC or iSCSI datastore and attach it to single host or multiple hosts in the cluster. Following steps illustrates provisioning a datastore and attach it to the cluster.

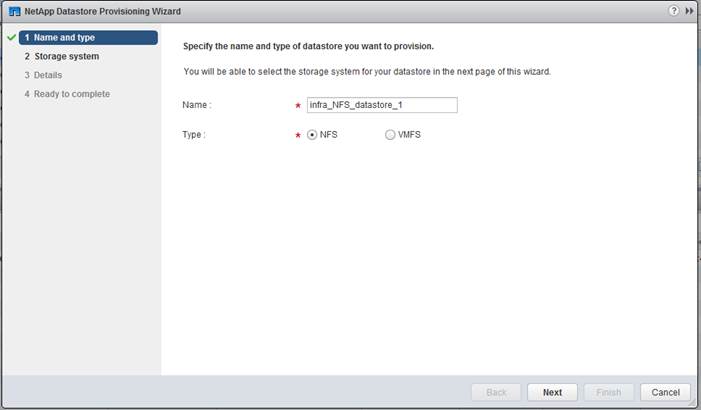
**Provisioning NFS Datastore**

1.    From the Home screen of the vSphere Web Client, right-click the FlexPod-Management cluster and select “NetApp VSC > Provision Datastore”.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_103.png)

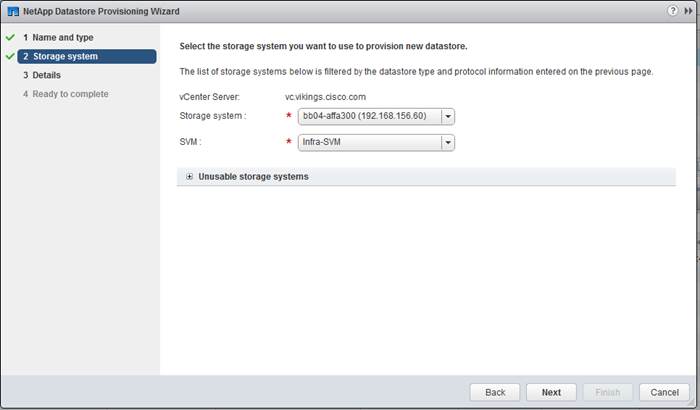
2.    Enter the datastore name and select the type as NFS.

3.    Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_104.jpg)

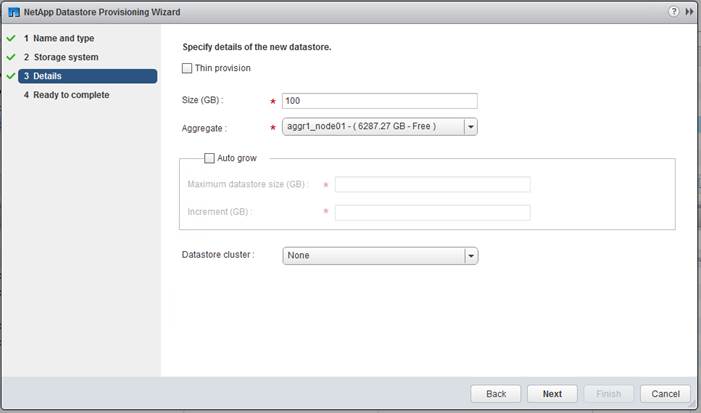
4.    Select the cluster name in the Storage system and desired SVM to create the datastore. In this example, Infra-SVM is selected.

5.    Click Next.

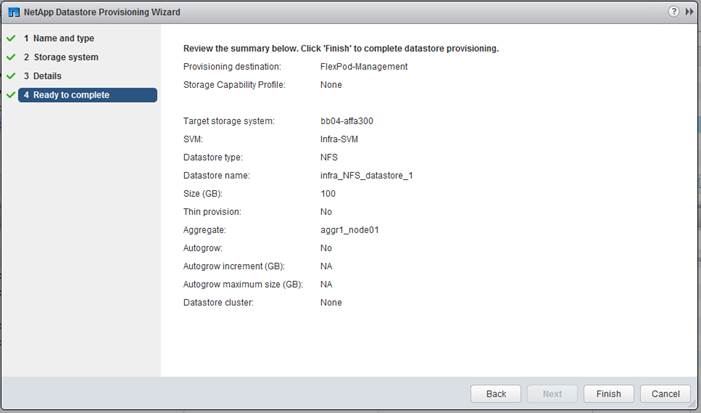
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_105.jpg)

6.    Enter the size of the datastore and select the aggregate name.

7.    Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_106.jpg)

8.    Review the details and click Finish.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_107.jpg)

9.     Click Ok.

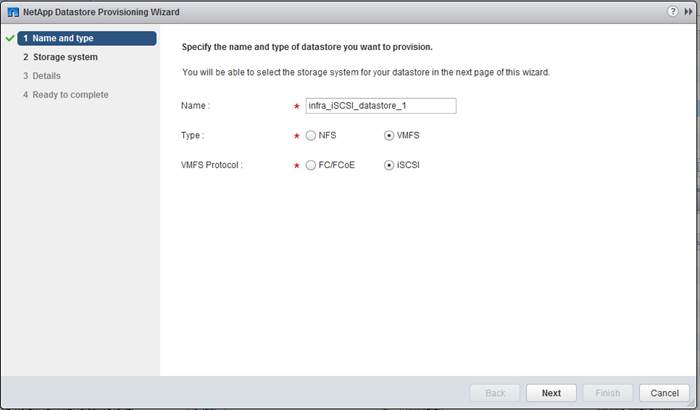
[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The datastore will be created and mounted on all the hosts in the cluster. Click refresh screen from vSphere web client to see the newly created datastore.

**Provisioning FC Datastore**

1.    From the Home screen of the vSphere Web Client, right-click the FlexPod-Management cluster and select “NetApp VSC > Provision Datastore”.

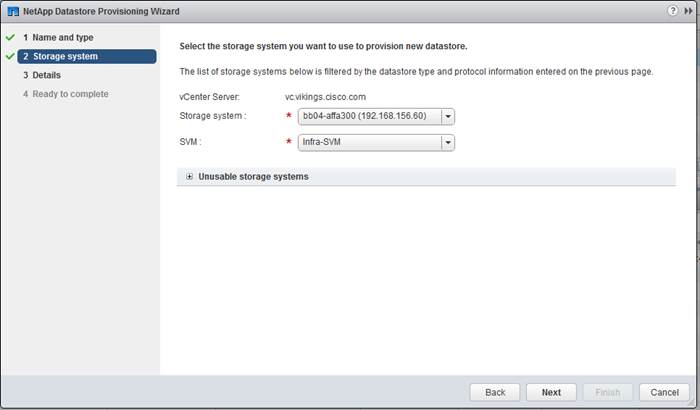
2.    Enter the datastore name and select the type as VMFS. For VMFS protocol, select FC/FCoE.

3.    Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_108.jpg)

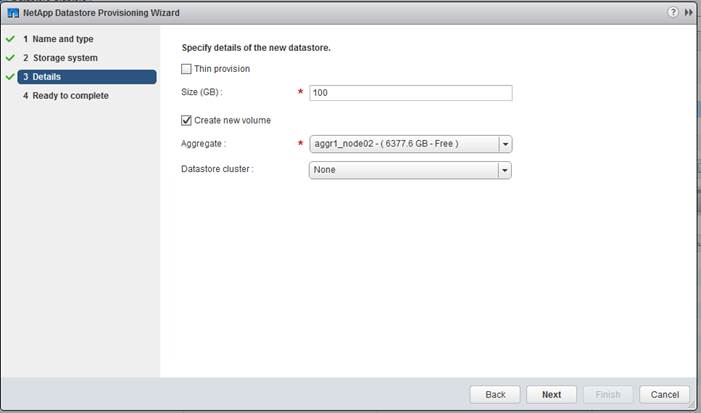
4.    Select the cluster name in the Storage system and desired SVM to create the datastore. In this example, Infra-SVM is selected.

5.    Click Next.

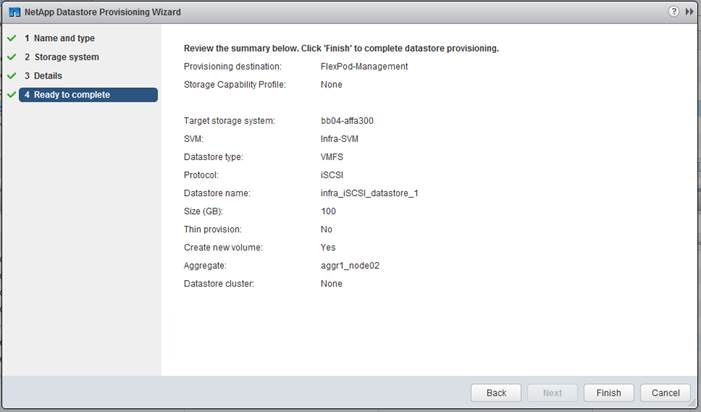
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_109.jpg)

6.    Enter the size of the datastore. Select “Create new volume” checkbox and select the aggregate name.

7.    Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_110.jpg)

8.    Review the details and click Finish.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_111.jpg)

9.     Click Ok.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The datastore will be created and mounted on all the hosts in the cluster. Click Refresh from the vSphere web client to see the newly created datastore

**Virtual Storage Console 6.2.1P1 Backup and Recovery**

**Prerequisites for Use of Backup and Recovery Capability**

Before you begin using the Backup and Recovery capability to schedule backups and restores of your datastores, VMs, or virtual disk files, you must confirm that the storage systems that contain the datastores and VMs for which you are creating backups have valid storage credentials.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          If you plan to leverage the SnapMirror update option, add all of the destination storage systems with valid storage credentials.

**Backup and Recovery Configuration**

To configure a backup job for a datastore, complete the following steps:

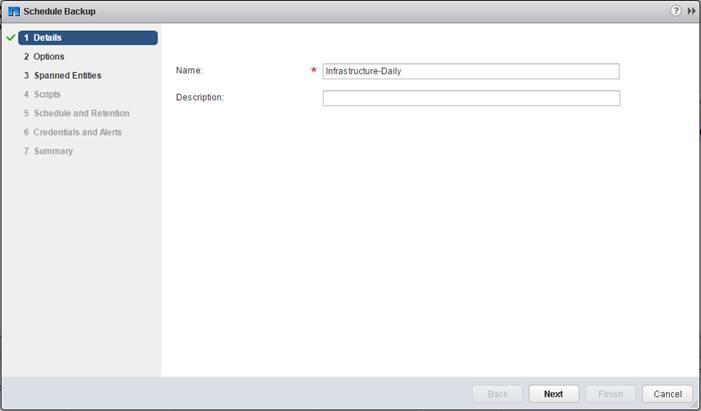
1.    From the Home screen of the vSphere Web Client, select the Home tab and click Storage.

2.    On the left, expand the datacenter.

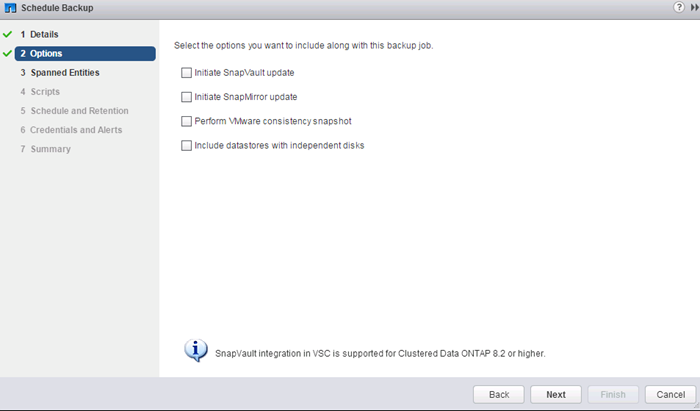
3.    Right-click the datastore that you need to backup. Select NetApp VSC > Schedule Backup.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          If you prefer a one-time backup, choose Backup Now instead of Schedule Backup.

4.    Type a backup job name and description. Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_112.jpg)

5.    Select the options necessary for the backup.

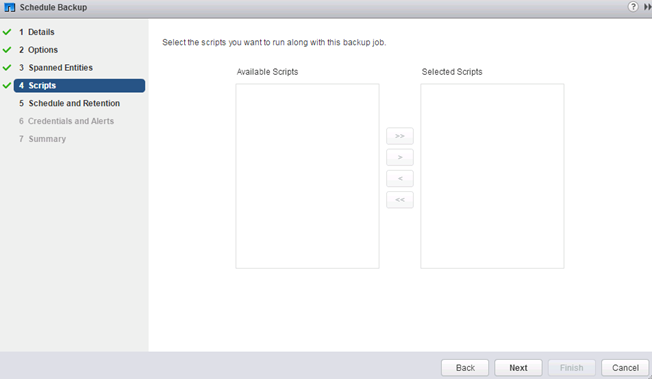
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_113.png)

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For consistent VM snapshots, select Perform VMware Consistency Snapshot to make a VMware snapshot of each VM just before the NetApp Snapshot copy is made. The VMware snapshot is then deleted after the NetApp Snapshot copy is made.

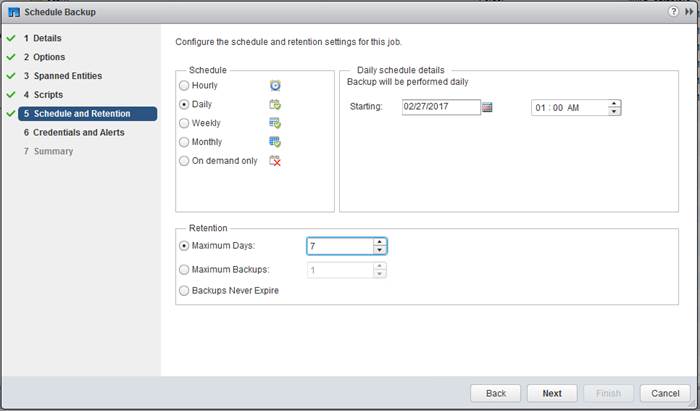
6.    Click Next on the Options screen.

7.    Click Next on the Spanned Entities screen.

8.    Select one or more backup scripts if available, and click Next in the Scripts screen.

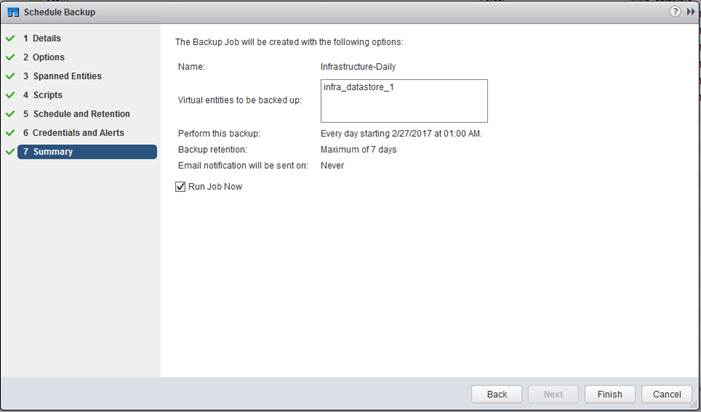
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_114.png)

9.    Select the hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly schedule and retention policy that you want for this backup job. Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_115.jpg)

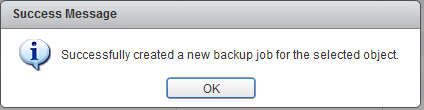
10.  Use the default vCenter credentials or enter the user name and password for the vCenter server. Click Next.

11.  Specify any needed backup notification details. Enter an e-mail address and mail server address for receiving e-mail alerts. You can add multiple e-mail addresses by using semicolons to separate them. Click Next.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_116.jpg)

12.  Review the summary page and click Finish. If you want to run the job immediately, select the Run Job Now option and then click Finish.

13.  Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_117.png)

14.  You can also create other backup jobs with overlapping schedules. For example, you can create weekly or monthly backups that overlay daily backups.

15.  On the storage cluster interface, automatic Snapshot copies of the volume can now be disabled because NetApp VSC is now handling scheduled backups. To do so, enter the following command:

volume modify -vserver Infra-SVM -volume infra\_datastore\_1 -snapshot-policy none

16.  Also, to delete any existing automatic Snapshot copies that have been created on the volume, enter the following command:

volume snapshot show -vserver Infra-SVM -volume infra\_datastore\_1

volume snapshot delete -vserver Infra-SVM -volume infra\_datastore\_1 -snapshot <snapshot-name>

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The wildcard character \* can be used in Snapshot names in the previous command.

**Sample Tenant Provisioning**

Provisioning a Sample Application Tenant

This section describes a sample procedure for provisioning an application tenant. The procedure here refers to previous sections of this document and can be used as a guide and modified as needed when provisioning an application tenant.

1.    Plan your application tenant and determine what storage protocols will be provided in the tenant.  In the architecture covered in this document, fiber channel, NFS, iSCSI, and CIFS/SMB can be provided to the tenant.  Also, plan what network VLANs the tenant will use.  It is recommended to have a VLAN for virtual machine management traffic.  One or two VLANs (iSCSI needs two if VMware RDM LUNs or iSCSI datastores will be provisioned) are also needed for each storage protocol used except fiber channel.  Fiber channel will have new storage LIFs defined with the same VSANs configured for the FlexPod Infrastructure.

2.    In the Nexus switches, declare all added VLANs and configure the VM VLAN as an allowed VLAN on the UCS port channels and the vPC peer link.  Also, Layer 3 with HSRP or VRRP can be configured in the Nexus switches to provide this VLAN access to the outside.  Layer 3 setup is not covered in this document, but is covered in the Nexus 9000 documentation. Configure the storage VLANs on the UCS and storage port channels, and on the vPC peer link. The VM VLAN can also be added to the storage port channels in order to configure the tenant SVM management interface on this VLAN.

3.    In the storage cluster:

a.     Create a broadcast domain with MTU 1500 for the tenant SVM management interface. Create a broadcast domain with MTU 9000 for each tenant storage protocol except fiber channel.

b.    Create VLAN interface ports on the node interface group on each node for tenant SVM management (VM VLAN) and for the VLAN for each storage protocol except fiber channel.  Add these VLAN ports to the appropriate broadcast domains.

c.     Create the tenant SVM and follow all procedures in that section.

d.    Create Load-Sharing Mirrors for the tenant SVM.

e.    Create the FC service for the tenant SVM if fiber channel is being deployed in this tenant.

f.      Optionally, create a self-signed security certificate for the tenant SVM.

g.    Configure NFSv3 for the tenant SVM.

h.     Create a VM datastore volume in the tenant SVM.

i.      Create a once-a-day deduplication schedule on the VM datastore volume.

j.      If fiber channel is being deployed in this tenant, configure four FCP LIFs in the tenant SVM on the same fiber channel ports as in the Infrastructure SVM.

k.     Create an NFS LIF in the tenant SVM on each storage node.

l.      Create a boot LUN in the esxi\_boot volume in the Infra-SVM for each tenant VMware ESXi host.

m.   Add the tenant SVM Administrator, SVM management LIF on the SVM management VLAN port, and default route for the SVM.

4.    In Cisco UCS, one method of tenant setup is to dedicate a VMware ESXi cluster and set of UCS servers to each tenant.  Service profiles will be generated for at least two tenant ESXi hosts.  These hosts can boot from LUNs from the esxi\_boot volume in the Infra-SVM, but will also have access to FC storage in the tenant SVM.

a.     Create a Server Pool for the tenant ESXi host servers.

b.    Create all tenant VLANs in the LAN Cloud.

c.     Add the tenant VLANs to the DVS vNIC templates.

Generate service profiles from the service profile template with the vMedia policy for the tenant ESXi hosts.  Remember to bind these service profiles to the service profile template without the vMedia policy after VMware ESXi installation.

1.    In the Cisco MDS 9148S switches:

a.     Create device aliases for the tenant ESXi host vHBAs and the FC LIFs in the tenant storage SVM.

b.    Create zones for the tenant ESXi hosts with fiber channel targets from both the storage Infra-SVM and the tenant SVM.

c.     Add these zones to the Fabric zoneset and activate the zoneset.

2.    In the storage cluster:

a.      Create igroups for the tenant ESXi hosts in both the Infra-SVM and tenant SVM.  Also, create an igroup in the tenant SVM that includes the WWPNs for all tenant ESXi hosts to support shared storage from the tenant SVM.

b.    In Infra-SVM, map the boot LUNs created earlier to the tenant ESXi hosts.  Tenant FC storage can be created later using either NetApp VSC or NetApp SnapDrive.

3.    Install and configure VMware ESXi on all tenant host servers. It is not necessary to map infra\_datastore\_1.

4.    In VMware vCenter, create a cluster for the tenant ESXi hosts.  Add the hosts to the cluster.

5.    Using the vCenter Web Client, add the tenant hosts to the VMware vDS. In the VMware vDS, add port-profiles for the tenant VLANs.

6.    Back in vCenter, add in any necessary VMkernel ports for storage interfaces remembering to set the MTU correctly on these interfaces.  Mount the tenant NFS datastore on the tenant cluster if one was created.

7.    Using the NetApp VSC plugin to the vCenter Web Client, set recommended values for all tenant ESXi hosts.  Install the NetApp NFS Plug-in for VMware VAAI for all tenant hosts and reboot each host. Optionally, create a VSC backup job for the tenant NFS datastore.

8.    You can now begin provisioning virtual machines on the tenant cluster.  The NetApp VSC plugin can be used to provision both fiber channel and NFS datastores.

**Appendix**

Cisco UCS FCoE Direct Storage Connect Base Configuration

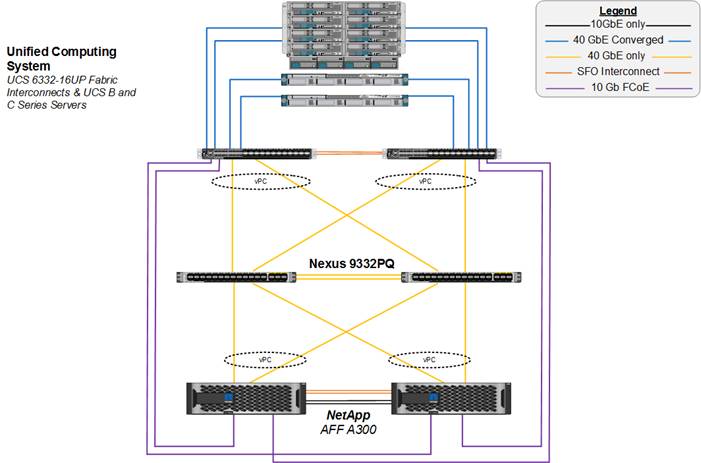
This FlexPod deployment will show configuration steps for both the Cisco UCS 6332-16UP and Cisco UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnects (FI) in a design that will support Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) connectivity to the NetApp.

Configuration steps will be referenced for both fabric interconnects and will be called out by the specific model where steps have differed.  Additionally, four FCoE LIFs are assumed to be created on the storage controllers to be used by these fabric interconnects.

This section contains the Cisco UCS deployment with storage FCoE ports directly connected to the Cisco UCS fabric interconnects. Fiber Channel (FC) direct connectivity is also supported but not covered in this procedure.

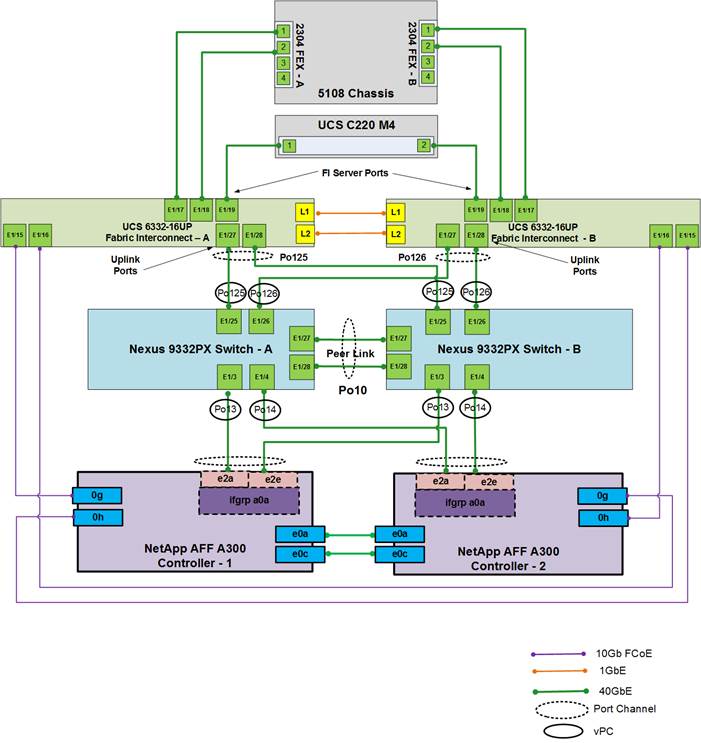
The topology will circumvent the MDS within the FCoE direct storage connect configuration, connecting each NetApp AFF A300 controller directly to each UCS Fabric Interconnect as shown in Figure 5 below.

Figure 5       FCoE Direct Connect FlexPod with Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnects

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_118.jpg)

Cabling requirements are shown in Figure 6 below.  The 6332-16UP cabling is shown, as with the topology diagram previously shown, but in both cases the 6248UP can be swapped in with port changes adjusted as appropriate.

Figure 6       FCoE Direct Connect FlexPod Cabling with Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnect

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_119.jpg)

Perform Initial Setup of Cisco UCS 6332-16UP and 6248UP Fabric Interconnects for FlexPod Environments

This section provides detailed procedures for configuring the Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS) for use in a FlexPod environment. The steps are necessary to provision the Cisco UCS B-Series and C-Series servers and should be followed precisely to avoid improper configuration.

Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect A

To configure the Cisco UCS for use in a FlexPod environment, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to the console port on the first Cisco UCS fabric interconnect.

Enter the configuration method: gui

Physical switch Mgmt0 IP address: <ucsa-mgmt-ip>

Physical switch Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: <ucsa-mgmt-mask>

IPv4 address of the default gateway: <ucsa-mgmt-gateway>

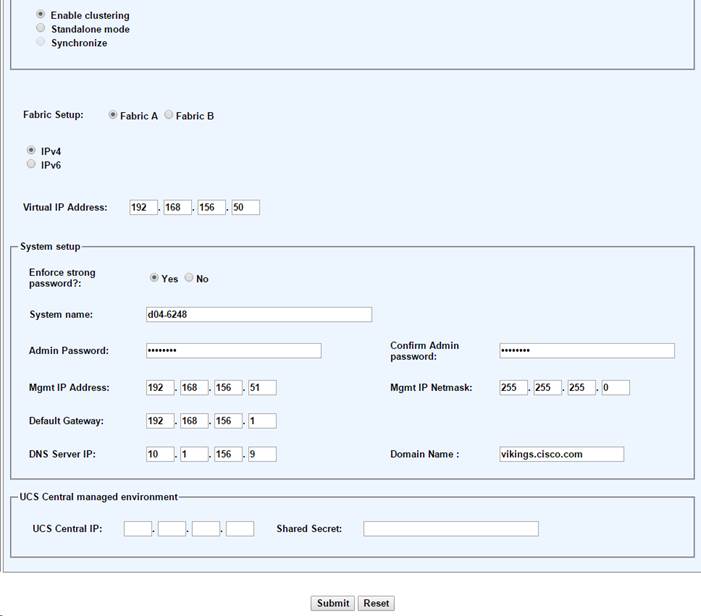
2.    Using a supported web browser, connect to **<https://ucsa-mgmt-ip**>, accept the security prompts, and click the ‘Express Setup’ link under HTML.

3.    Select Initial Setup and click Submit.

4.    Select Enable clustering, Fabric A, and IPv4.

5.    Fill in the Virtual IP Address with the UCS cluster IP.

6.    Completely fill in the System setup section.  For system name, use the overall UCS system name. For the Mgmt IP Address, use <ucsa-mgmt-ip>.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_120.jpg)

7.    Click Submit.

Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect B

To configure the Cisco UCS for use in a FlexPod environment, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to the console port on the second Cisco UCS fabric interconnect.

Enter the configuration method: gui

Physical switch Mgmt0 IP address: <ucsb-mgmt-ip>

Physical switch Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask: <ucsb-mgmt-mask>

IPv4 address of the default gateway: <ucsb-mgmt-gateway>

2.    Using a supported web browser, connect to https://<ucsb-mgmt-ip>, accept the security prompts, and click the ‘Express Setup’ link under HTML.

3.    Under System setup, enter the Admin Password entered above and click Submit.

4.    Enter <ucsb-mgmt-ip> for the Mgmt IP Address and click Submit.

**Cisco UCS FCoE Direct Storage Connect Setup**

**Log in to Cisco UCS Manager**

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The steps are the same between the UCS 6332-16UP and the UCS 6248UP Fabric Interconnects unless otherwise noted

To log in to the Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS) environment, complete the following steps:

1.    Open a web browser and navigate to the Cisco UCS fabric interconnect cluster address.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          You may need to wait at least 5 minutes after configuring the second fabric interconnect for UCS Manager to come up.

2.    Click the Launch UCS Manager link under HTML to launch Cisco UCS Manager.

3.    If prompted to accept security certificates, accept as necessary.

4.    When prompted, enter admin as the user name and enter the administrative password.

5.    Click Login to log in to Cisco UCS Manager.

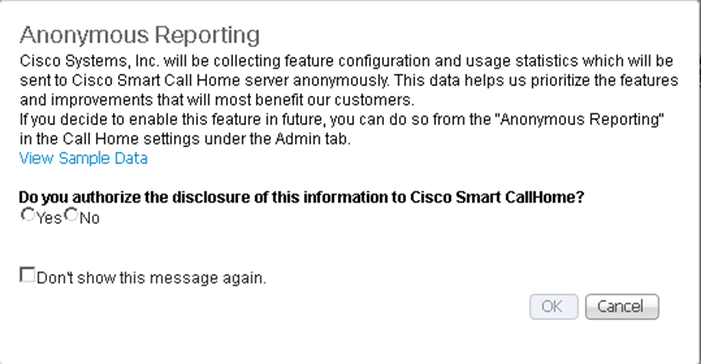
**Upgrade Cisco UCS Manager Software to Version 3.1(2f)**

This document assumes the use of Cisco UCS 3.1(2f). To upgrade the Cisco UCS Manager software and the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect software to version 3.1(2f), refer to [Cisco UCS Manager Install and Upgrade Guides](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10281/prod_installation_guides_list.html).

**Anonymous Reporting**

To create anonymous reporting, complete the following step:

1.    In the Anonymous Reporting window, select whether to send anonymous data to Cisco for improving future products. If you select Yes, enter the IP address of your SMTP Server.  Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_121.png)

**Configure Cisco UCS Call Home**

It is highly recommended by Cisco to configure Call Home in Cisco UCS Manager.  Configuring Call Home will accelerate resolution of support cases.  To configure Call Home, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Admin on the left.

2.    Select All > Communication Management > Call Home.

3.    Change the State to On.

4.    Fill in all the fields according to your Management preferences and click Save Changes and OK to complete configuring Call Home.

**Place Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects in Fiber Channel Switching Mode**

In order to use FCOE Storage Ports for storage directly connected to the UCS fabric interconnects, the fabric interconnects must be changed from fiber channel end host mode to fiber channel switching mode.

To place the fabric interconnects in fiber channel switching mode, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left.

2.    Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary).

3.    In the center pane, select set FC Switching Mode.  Click Yes and OK for the confirmation message.

4.    Wait for both Fabric Interconnects to reboot by monitoring the console ports and log back into Cisco UCS Manager.

Add Block of IP Addresses for KVM Access

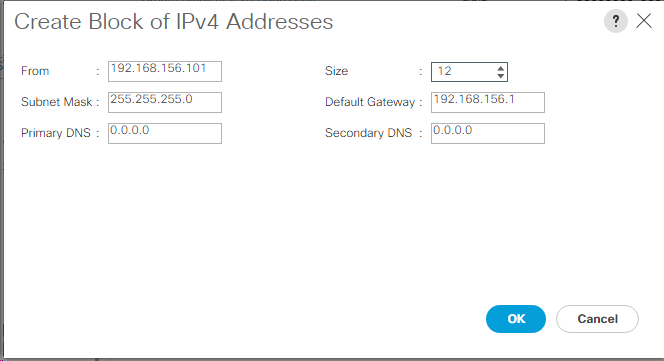
To create a block of IP addresses for in band server Keyboard, Video, Mouse (KVM) access in the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Expand Pools > root > IP Pools.

3.    Right-click IP Pool ext-mgmt and select Create Block of IPv4 Addresses.

4.    Enter the starting IP address of the block, number of IP addresses required, and the subnet mask and gateway information.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_122.png)

5.    Click OK to create the block.

6.    Click OK in the confirmation message.

Synchronize Cisco UCS to NTP

To synchronize the Cisco UCS environment to the NTP servers in the Nexus switches, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Admin on the left.

2.    Expand All > Time Zone Management.

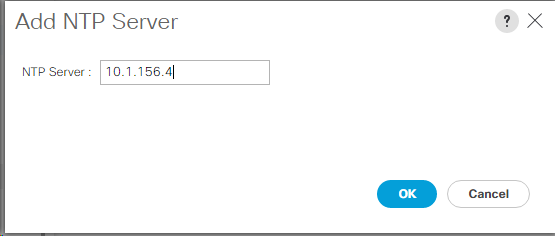
3.    Select Timezone.

4.    In the Properties pane, select the appropriate time zone in the Time Zone pulldown.

5.    Click Save Changes, and then click OK.

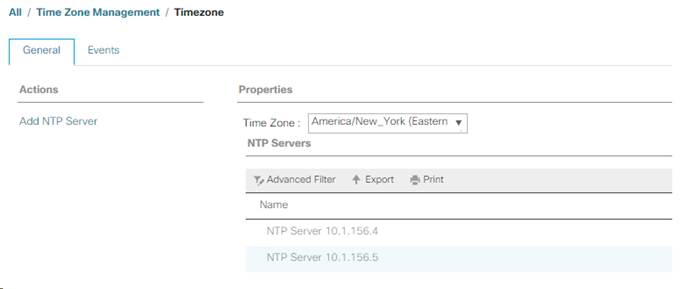
6.    Click Add NTP Server.

7.    Enter <switch-a-ntp-ip> and click OK. Click OK on the confirmation.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_123.png)

8.    Click Add NTP Server.

9.    Enter <switch-b-ntp-ip> and click OK. Click OK on the confirmation.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_124.jpg)

**Edit Chassis Discovery Policy**

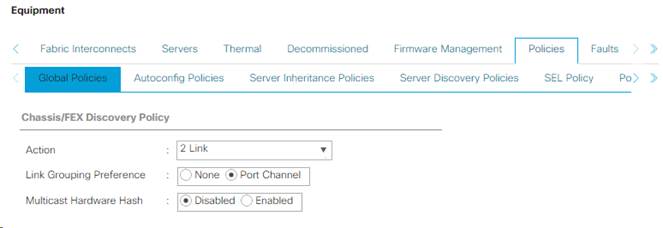
Setting the discovery policy simplifies the addition of B-Series Cisco UCS chassis and of additional fabric extenders for further C-Series connectivity. To modify the chassis discovery policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left and select Equipment in the second list.

2.    In the right pane, click the Policies tab.

3.    Under Global Policies, set the Chassis/FEX Discovery Policy to match the minimum number of uplink ports that are cabled between the chassis or fabric extenders (FEXes) and the fabric interconnects.

4.    Set the Link Grouping Preference to Port Channel. If Backplane Speed Preference appears, leave it set at 40G.  If the 6248UP environment being setup contains a large amount of multicast traffic, set the Multicast Hardware Hash setting to Enabled.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_125.jpg)

5.    Click Save Changes.

6.    Click OK.

**Enable Server and Uplink Ports**

To enable server and uplink ports, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left.

2.    Expand Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary) > Fixed Module.

3.    Expand Ethernet Ports.

4.    Select the ports that are connected to the chassis, Cisco FEX, and direct connect Cisco UCS C-Series servers, right-click them, and select “Configure as Server Port.”

5.    Click Yes to confirm server ports and click OK.

6.    Verify that the ports connected to the chassis, C-series servers and Cisco FEX are now configured as server ports.

7.    Select the ports that are connected to the Cisco Nexus switches, right-click them, and select Configure as Uplink Port.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          The last 6 ports of the Cisco UCS 6332 and Cisco UCS 6332-16UP FIs will only work with optical based QSFP transceivers and AOC cables, so they can be better utilized as uplinks to upstream resources that might be optical only.

8.    Click Yes to confirm uplink ports and click OK.

9.    Select the FCoE ports that are connected to the NetApp storage controllers, right-click them, and select Configure as FCoE Storage Port.

10.  Click Yes to confirm FCoE Storage ports and click OK.

11.  Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect B (subordinate) > Fixed Module.

12.  Expand Ethernet Ports.

13.  Select the ports that are connected to the chassis, C-series servers or to the Cisco 2232 FEX (two per FEX), right-click them, and select Configure as Server Port.

14.  Click Yes to confirm server ports and click OK.

15.  Select the ports that are connected to the Cisco Nexus switches, right-click them, and select Configure as Uplink Port.

16.  Click Yes to confirm the uplink ports and click OK.

17.  Select the FCoE ports that are connected to the NetApp storage controllers, right-click them, and select Configure as FCoE Storage Port.

18.  Click Yes to confirm FCoE Storage ports and click OK.

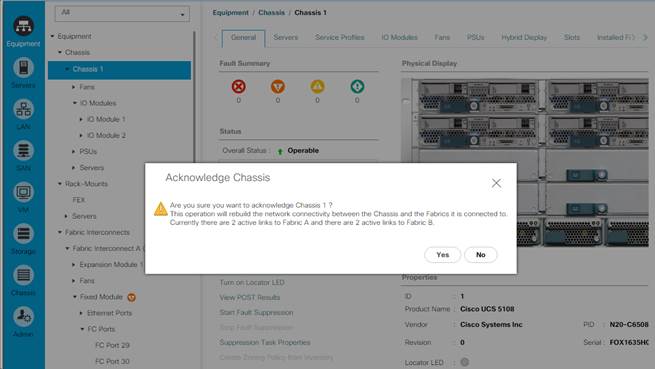
**Acknowledge Cisco UCS Chassis and FEX**

To acknowledge all Cisco UCS chassis and any external 2232 FEX modules, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment on the left.

2.    Expand Chassis and select each chassis that is listed.

3.    Right-click each chassis and select Acknowledge Chassis.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_126.jpg)

4.    Click Yes and then click OK to complete acknowledging the chassis.

5.    If Nexus 2232 FEX are part of the configuration, expand Rack Mounts and FEX.

6.    Right-click each FEX that is listed and select Acknowledge FEX.

7.    Click Yes and then click OK to complete acknowledging the FEX.

Create Uplink Port Channels to Cisco Nexus Switches

To configure the necessary port channels out of the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this procedure, two port channels are created: one from fabric A to both Cisco Nexus switches and one from fabric B to both Cisco Nexus switches.

2.    Under LAN > LAN Cloud, expand the Fabric A tree.

3.    Right-click Port Channels.

4.    Select Create Port Channel.

5.    Enter a unique ID of the port channel.

6.    Enter vPC-Nexus as the name of the port channel.

7.    Click Next.

8.    Select the ports connected to the Nexus switches to be added to the port channel:

9.    Click >> to add the ports to the port channel.

10.  Click Finish to create the port channel.

11.  Click OK.

12.  In the navigation pane, under LAN > LAN Cloud, expand the fabric B tree.

13.  Right-click Port Channels.

14.  Select Create Port Channel.

15.  Enter a unique ID of the port channel.

16.  Enter vPC-Nexus as the name of the port channel.

17.  Click Next.

18.  Select the ports connected to the Nexus switches to be added to the port channel:

19.  Click >> to add the ports to the port channel.

20.  Click Finish to create the port channel.

21.  Click OK.

**Create a WWNN Pool for FCoE Boot**

To configure the necessary WWNN pool for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps on Cisco UCS Manager.

1.    Select SAN on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

3.    Right-click WWNN Pools under the root organization.

4.    Select Create WWNN Pool to create the WWNN pool.

5.    Enter WWNN-Pool for the name of the WWNN pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the WWNN pool.

7.    Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_127.jpg)

8.    Click Next.

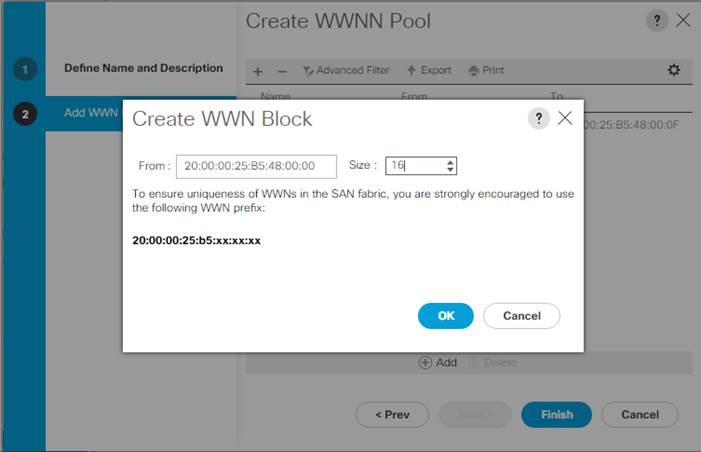
9.    Click Add.

10.  Modify the From field as necessary for the UCS Environment.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Modifications of the WWNN block, as well as the WWPN and MAC Addresses, can convey identifying information for the UCS domain.  Within the From field in our example, the 6th octet was changed from 00 to 48 to represent as identifying information for this being in the Cisco UCS 6248 in the 4th cabinet.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          When there are multiple UCS domains sitting in adjacency, it is important that these blocks, the WWNN, WWPN, and MAC hold differing values between each set.

11.  Specify a size of the WWNN block sufficient to support the available server resources.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_128.jpg)

12.  Click OK.

13.  Click Finish and OK to complete creating the WWNN pool.

**Create WWPN Pools**

To configure the necessary WWPN pools for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

3.    In this procedure, two WWPN pools are created, one for each switching fabric.

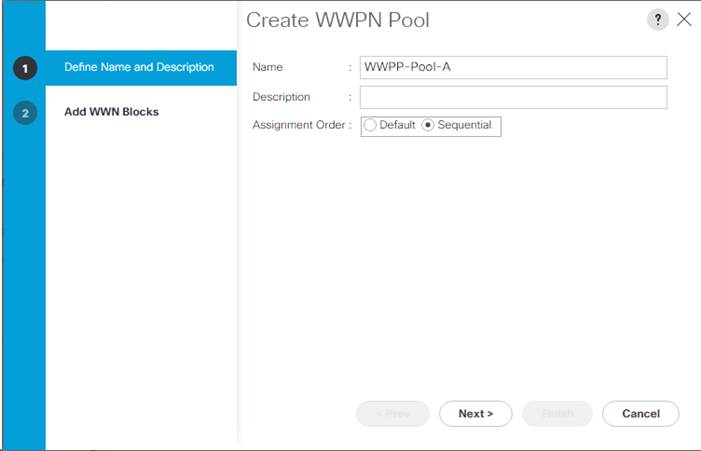
4.    Right-click WWPN Pools under the root organization.

5.    Select Create WWPN Pool to create the WWPN pool.

6.    Enter WWPN-Pool-A as the name of the WWPN pool.

7.    Optional: Enter a description for the WWPN pool.

8.    Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_129.jpg)

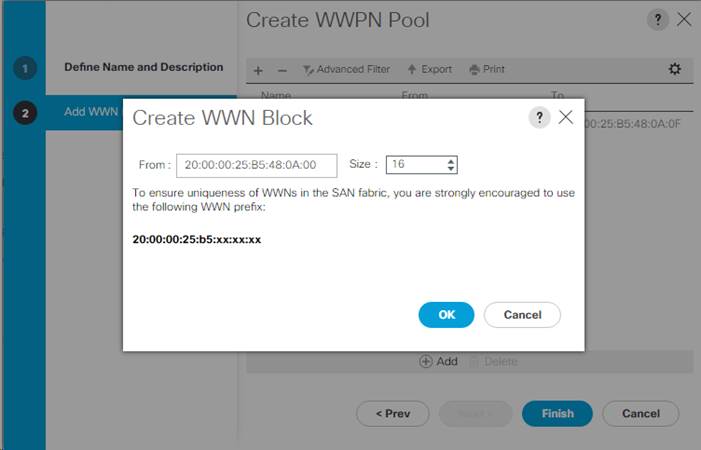
9.    Click Next.

10.  Click Add.

11.  Specify a starting WWPN.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, the recommendation is to place 0A in the next-to-last octet of the starting WWPN to identify all of the WWPNs as fabric A addresses.  Merging this with the pattern we used for the WWNN we see a WWPN block starting with 20:00:00:25:B5:48:0A:00.

12.  Specify a size for the WWPN pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_130.jpg)

13.  Click OK.

14.  Click Finish.

15.  In the confirmation message, click OK.

16.  Right-click WWPN Pools under the root organization.

17.  Select Create WWPN Pool to create the WWPN pool.

18.  Enter WWPN-Pool-B as the name of the WWPN pool.

19.  Optional: Enter a description for the WWPN pool.

20.  Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

21.  Click Next.

22.  Click Add.

23.  Specify a starting WWPN.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, the recommendation is to place 0B in the next-to-last octet of the starting WWPN to identify all of the WWPNs as fabric A addresses.  Merging this with the pattern we used for the WWNN we see a WWPN block starting with 20:00:00:25:B5:48:0B:00.

24.  Specify a size for the WWPN address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

25.  Click OK.

26.  Click Finish.

27.  In the confirmation message, click OK.

Create Storage VSANs

To configure the necessary virtual storage area networks (VSANs) for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this procedure, two VSANs are created.

2.    Select SAN > Storage Cloud.

3.    Right-click VSANs.

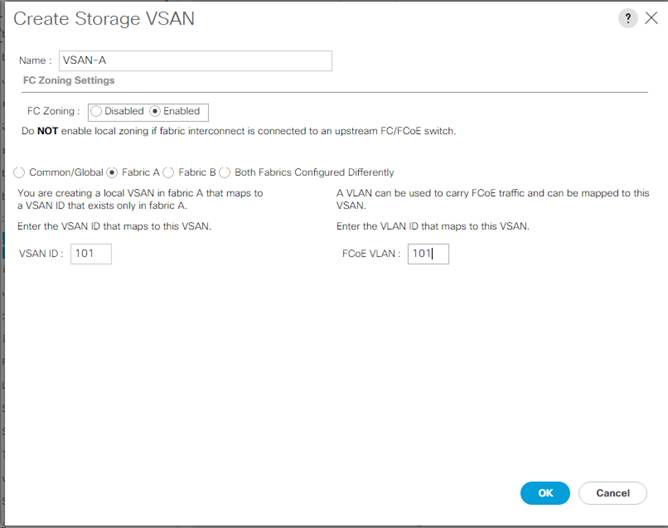
4.    Select Create Storage VSAN.

5.    Enter VSAN-A as the name of the VSAN to be used for Fabric A

6.    Set FC Zoning to Enabled.

7.    Select Fabric A.

8.    Enter a unique VSAN ID and a corresponding FCoE VLAN ID for Fabric A.  It is recommended to use the same ID for both parameters and to use something other than 1.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_131.jpg)

9.    Click OK and then click OK again.

10.  Under Storage Cloud, right-click VSANs.

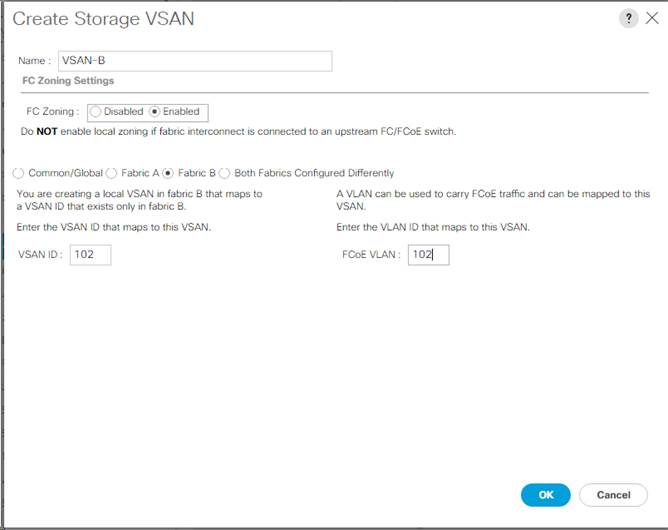
11.  Select Create Storage VSAN.

12.  Enter VSAN-B as the name of the VSAN to be used for Fabric B.

13.  Set FC Zoning to Enabled.

14.  Select Fabric B.

15.  Enter a unique VSAN ID and a corresponding FCoE VLAN ID for Fabric B.  It is recommended use the same ID for both parameters and to use something other than 1.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_132.jpg)

16.  Click OK and then click OK again.

**Assign VSANs to FCoE Storage Ports**

To assign storage VSANs to FCoE Storage Ports, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select SAN > Storage Cloud.

3.    Expand Fabric A and Storage FCoE Interfaces.

4.    Select the first FCoE Interface.

5.    For User Label, enter the storage controller name and port. Click Save Changes and OK.

6.    Use the pulldown to select VSAN VSAN-A. Click Save Changes and OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_133.jpg)

7.    Select the second FCoE Interface.

8.    For User Label, enter the storage controller name and port. Click Save Changes and OK.

9.    Use the pulldown to select VSAN VSAN-A. Click Save Changes and OK.

10.  Expand Fabric B and Storage FCoE Interfaces.

11.  Select the first FCoE Interface.

12.  For User Label, enter the storage controller name and port. Click Save Changes and OK.

13.  Use the pulldown to select VSAN VSAN-B. Click Save Changes and OK.

14.  Select the second FCoE Interface.

15.  For User Label, enter the storage controller name and port. Click Save Changes and OK.

16.  Use the pulldown to select VSAN VSAN-B. Click Save Changes and OK.

Create vHBA Templates

To create the necessary virtual host bus adapter (vHBA) templates for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vHBA Templates.

4.    Select Create vHBA Template.

5.    Enter vHBA-Template-A as the vHBA template name.

6.    Keep Fabric A selected.

7.    Leave Redundancy Type set to No Redundancy.

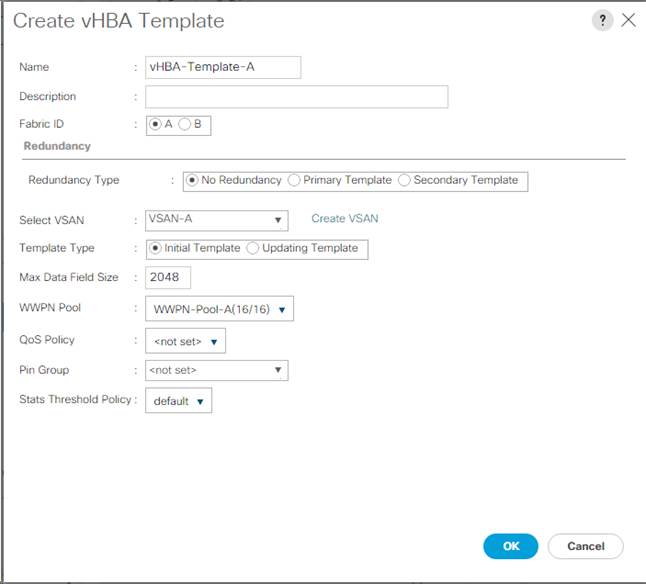
8.    Select VSAN-A.

9.    Leave Initial Template as the Template Type.

10.  Select WWPN-Pool-A as the WWPN Pool.

11.  Click OK to create the vHBA template.

12.  Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_134.jpg)

13.  Right-click vHBA Templates.

14.  Select Create vHBA Template.

15.  Enter vHBA-Template-B as the vHBA template name.

16.  Leave Redundancy Type set to No Redundancy.

17.  Select Fabric B as the Fabric ID.

18.  Select VSAN-B.

19.  Leave Initial Template as the Template Type.

20.  Select WWPN-Pool-B as the WWPN Pool.

21.  Click OK to create the vHBA template.

22.  Click OK.

Create SAN Connectivity Policy

To configure the necessary Infrastructure SAN Connectivity Policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select SAN > Policies > root.

3.    Right-click SAN Connectivity Policies.

4.    Select Create SAN Connectivity Policy.

5.    Enter FC-Boot as the name of the policy.

6.    Select the previously created WWNN-Pool for the WWNN Assignment.

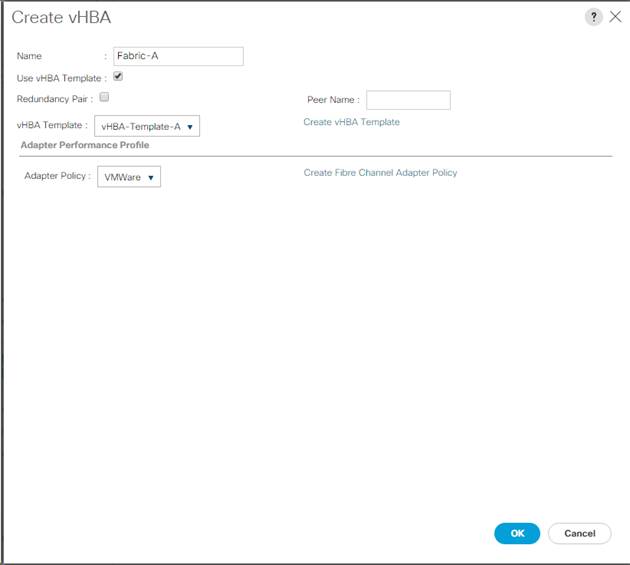
7.    Click the Add button at the bottom to add a vHBA.

8.    In the Create vHBA dialog box, enter Fabric-A as the name of the vHBA.

9.    Select the Use vHBA Template checkbox.

10.  In the vHBA Template list, select vHBA-Template-A.

11.  In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_135.jpg)

12.  Click OK.

13.  Click the Add button at the bottom to add a second vHBA.

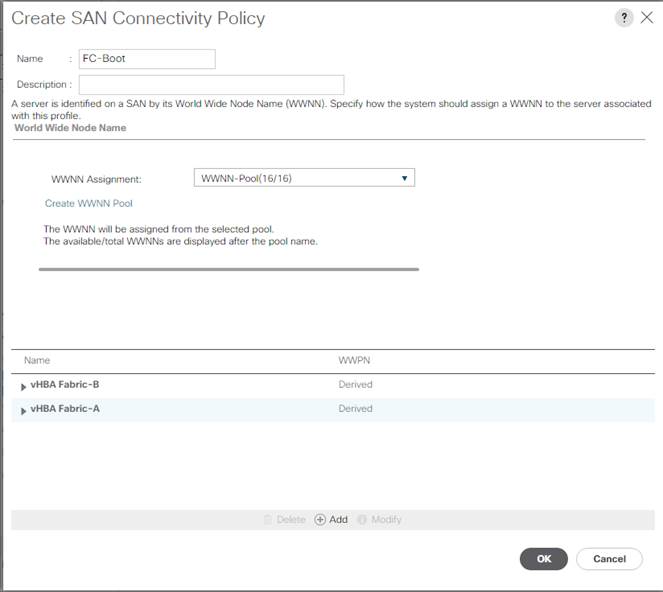
14.  In the Create vHBA dialog box, enter Fabric-B as the name of the vHBA.

15.  Select the Use vHBA Template checkbox.

16.  In the vHBA Template list, select vHBA-Template-B.

17.  In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

18.  Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_136.jpg)

19.  Click OK to create the SAN Connectivity Policy.

20.  Click OK to confirm creation.

Create MAC Address Pools

To configure the necessary MAC address pools for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this procedure, two MAC address pools are created, one for each switching fabric.

3.    Right-click MAC Pools under the root organization.

4.    Select Create MAC Pool to create the MAC address pool.

5.    Enter MAC-Pool-A as the name of the MAC pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the MAC pool.

7.    Select **Sequential** as the option for Assignment Order.

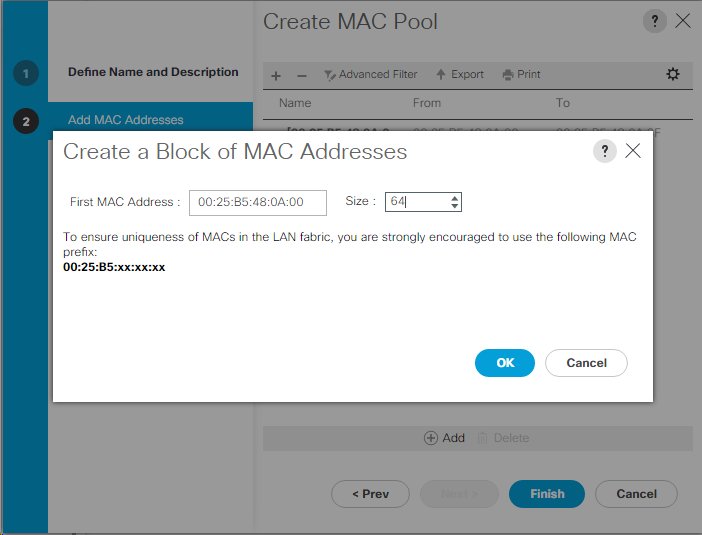
8.    Click Next.

9.    Click Add.

10.  Specify a starting MAC address.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, the recommendation is to place 0A in the next-to-last octet of the starting MAC address to identify all of the MAC addresses as fabric A addresses.  In our example, we have carried forward the of also embedding the UCS domain number information giving us 00:25:B5:48:0A:00 as our first MAC address.

11.  Specify a size for the MAC address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources, noting that 6 virtual network interfaces (vNICs) will be created on each server.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_137.png)

12.  Click OK.

13.  Click Finish.

14.  In the confirmation message, click OK.

15.  Right-click MAC Pools under the root organization.

16.  Select Create MAC Pool to create the MAC address pool.

17.  Enter MAC-Pool-B as the name of the MAC pool.

18.  Optional: Enter a description for the MAC pool.

19.  Select **Sequential** as the option for Assignment Order.

20.  Click Next.

21.  Click Add.

22.  Specify a starting MAC address.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For the FlexPod solution, it is recommended to place 0B in the next to last octet of the starting MAC address to identify all the MAC addresses in this pool as fabric B addresses.  Once again, we have carried forward in our example of also embedding the UCS domain number information giving us 00:25:B5:48:0B:00 as our first MAC address.

23.  Specify a size for the MAC address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

24.  Click OK.

25.  Click Finish.

26.  In the confirmation message, click OK.

Create UUID Suffix Pool

To configure the necessary universally unique identifier (UUID) suffix pool for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

3.    Right-click UUID Suffix Pools.

4.    Select Create UUID Suffix Pool.

5.    Enter UUID-Pool as the name of the UUID suffix pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the UUID suffix pool.

7.    Keep the prefix at the derived option.

8.    Select **Sequential** for the Assignment Order.

9.    Click Next.

10.  Click Add to add a block of UUIDs.

11.  Keep the From field at the default setting.

12.  Specify a size for the UUID block that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

13.  Click OK.

14.  Click Finish.

15.  Click OK.

**Create Server Pool**

To configure the necessary server pool for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Consider creating unique server pools to achieve the granularity that is required in your environment.

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Pools > root.

3.    Right-click Server Pools.

4.    Select Create Server Pool.

5.    Enter Infra-Pool as the name of the server pool.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the server pool.

7.    Click Next.

8.    Select two (or more) servers to be used for the VMware management cluster and click >> to add them to the Infra-Pool server pool.

9.    Click Finish.

10.  Click OK.

**Create VLANs**

To configure the necessary virtual local area networks (VLANs) for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          In this procedure, five unique VLANs are created. See [**Table 2.**](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.html?referring_site=RE&pos=3&page=https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpodsf_esxi65design.html#Table_2)

2.    Select LAN > LAN Cloud.

3.    Right-click VLANs.

4.    Select Create VLANs.

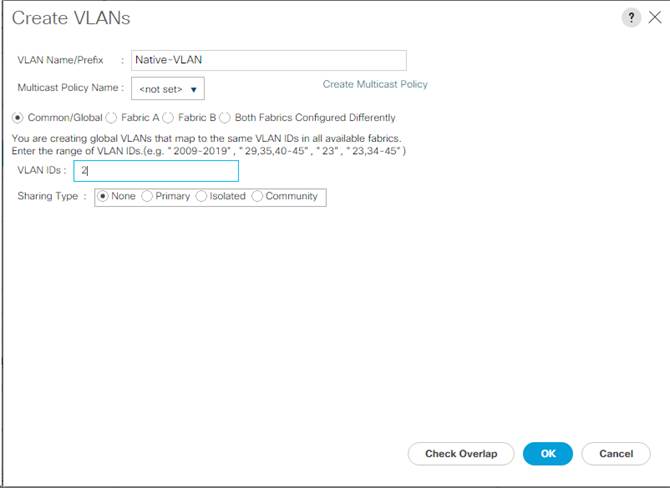
5.    Enter Native-VLAN as the name of the VLAN to be used as the native VLAN.

6.    Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

7.    Enter the native VLAN ID.

8.    Keep the Sharing Type as None.

9.    Click OK, and then click OK again.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_138.jpg)

10.  Expand the list of VLANs in the navigation pane, right-click the newly created Native-VLAN and select Set as Native VLAN.

11.  Click Yes and then click OK.

12.  Right-click VLANs.

13.  Select Create VLANs

14.  Enter IB-MGMT as the name of the VLAN to be used for management traffic.

15.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

16.  Enter the In-Band management VLAN ID.

17.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

18.  Click OK, and then click OK again.

19.  Right-click VLANs.

20.  Select Create VLANs.

21.  Enter Infra-NFS as the name of the VLAN to be used for NFS.

22.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

23.  Enter the Infrastructure NFS VLAN ID.

24.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

25.  Click OK, and then click OK again.

26.  Right-click VLANs.

27.  Select Create VLANs.

28.  Enter vMotion as the name of the VLAN to be used for vMotion.

29.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

30.  Enter the vMotion VLAN ID.

31.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

32.  Click OK, and then click OK again.

33.  Right-click VLANs.

34.  Select Create VLANs.

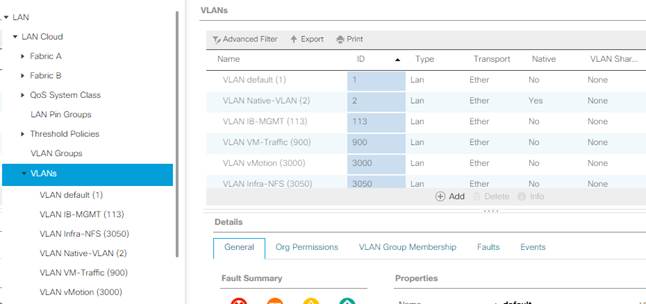
35.  Enter VM-Traffic as the name of the VLAN to be used for VM Traffic.

36.  Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

37.  Enter the VM-Traffic VLAN ID.

38.  Keep the Sharing Type as None.

39.  Click OK and then click OK again.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_139.jpg)

**Modify Default Host Firmware Package**

Firmware management policies allow the administrator to select the corresponding packages for a given server configuration. These policies often include packages for adapter, BIOS, board controller, FC adapters, host bus adapter (HBA) option ROM, and storage controller properties.

To create a firmware management policy for a given server configuration in the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

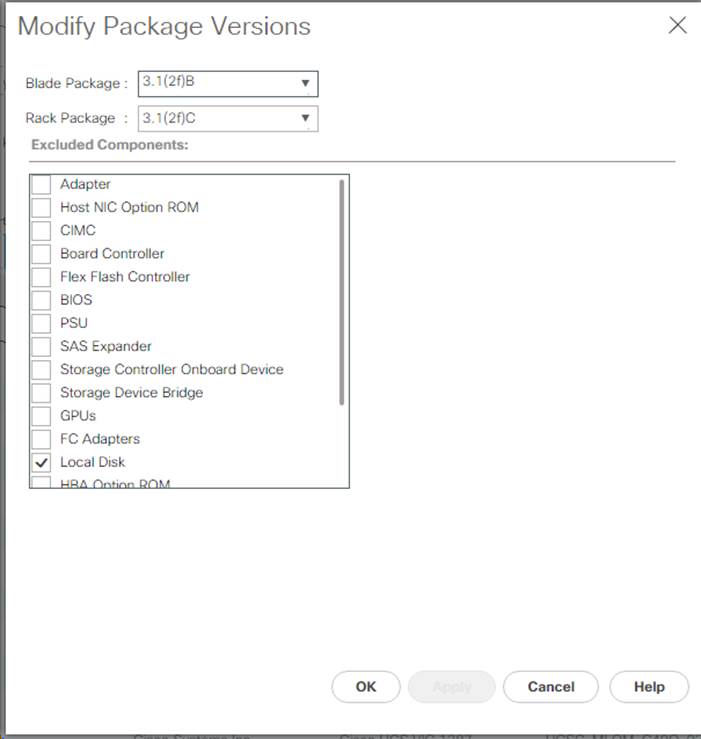
2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Expand Host Firmware Packages.

4.    Select default.

5.    In the Actions pane, select Modify Package Versions.

6.    Select the version 3.1(2f) for both the Blade and Rack Packages.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_140.jpg)

7.    Click OK, then click OK again to modify the host firmware package.

**Set Jumbo Frames in Cisco UCS Fabric**

To configure jumbo frames and enable quality of service in the Cisco UCS fabric, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

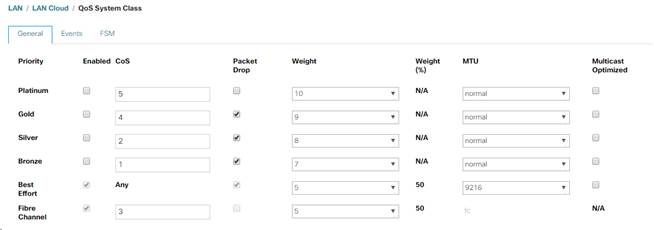
2.    Select LAN > LAN Cloud > QoS System Class.

3.    In the right pane, click the General tab.

4.    On the Best Effort row, enter 9216 in the box under the MTU column.

5.    Click Save Changes in the bottom of the window.

6.    Click OK

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_141.jpg)

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Only the Fibre Channel and Best Effort QoS System Classes are enabled in this FlexPod implementation.  The UCS and Nexus switches are intentionally configured this way so that all IP traffic within the FlexPod will be treated as Best Effort.  Enabling the other QoS System Classes without having a comprehensive, end-to-end QoS setup in place can cause difficult to troubleshoot issues.  For example, NetApp storage controllers by default mark IP-based storage protocol packets with a CoS value of 4.  With the default configuration on the Nexus switches in this implementation, storage packets will pass through the switches and into the UCS Fabric Interconnects with CoS 4 set in the packet header.  If the Gold QoS System Class in the UCS is enabled, these storage packets will be treated according to that class and if Jumbo Frames is being used for the storage protocols, but the MTU of the Gold QoS System Class is not set to Jumbo, packet drops will occur.

**Create Local Disk Configuration Policy (Optional)**

A local disk configuration for the Cisco UCS environment is necessary if the servers in the environment do not have a local disk.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This policy should not be used on servers that contain local disks.

To create a local disk configuration policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

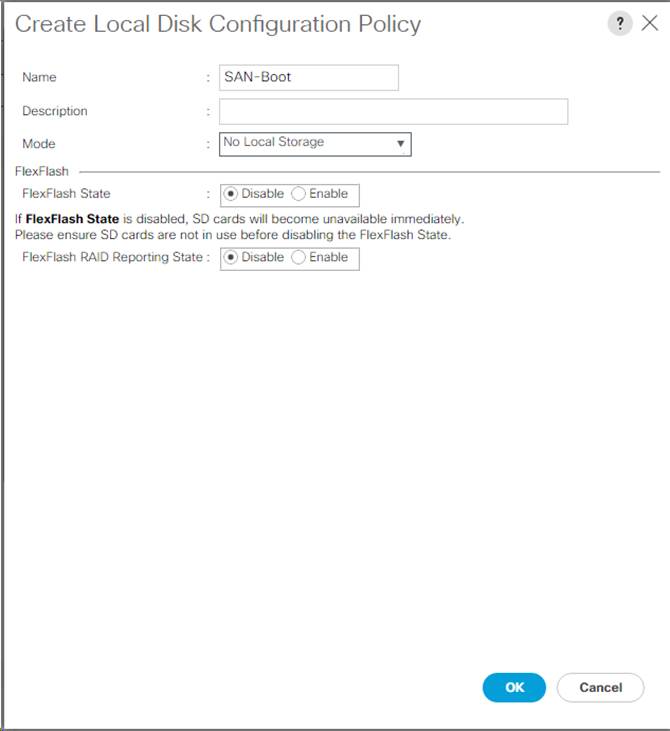
3.    Right-click Local Disk Config Policies.

4.    Select Create Local Disk Configuration Policy.

5.    Enter SAN-Boot as the local disk configuration policy name.

6.    Change the mode to No Local Storage.

7.    Click OK to create the local disk configuration policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_142.jpg)

8.    Click OK.

**Create Network Control Policy for Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) and Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)**

To create a network control policy that enables CDP and LLDP on virtual network ports, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Network Control Policies.

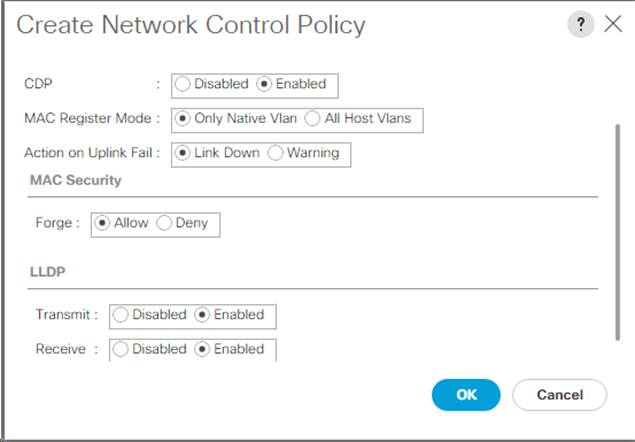
4.    Select Create Network Control Policy.

5.    Enter Enable-CDP-LLDP as the policy name.

6.    For CDP, select the Enabled option.

7.    For LLDP, scroll down and select Enabled for both Transmit and Receive.

8.    Click OK to create the network control policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_143.jpg)

9.    Click OK.

Create Power Control Policy

To create a power control policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers tab on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Power Control Policies.

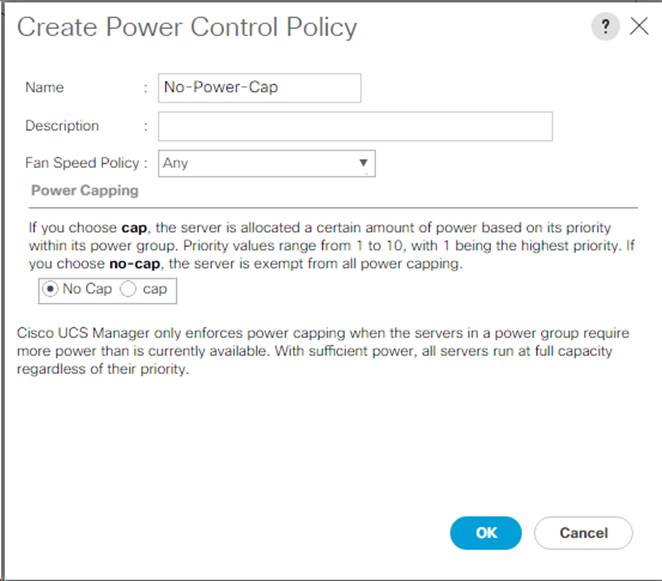
4.    Select Create Power Control Policy.

5.    Enter No-Power-Cap as the power control policy name.

6.    Change the power capping setting to No Cap.

7.    Click OK to create the power control policy.

8.    Click OK.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_144.jpg)

Create Server Pool Qualification Policy (Optional)

To create an optional server pool qualification policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This example creates a policy for Cisco UCS B-Series and Cisco UCS C-Series servers with the Intel E2660 v4 Xeon Broadwell processors.

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Server Pool Policy Qualifications.

4.    Select Create Server Pool Policy Qualification.

5.    Name the policy UCS-Broadwell.

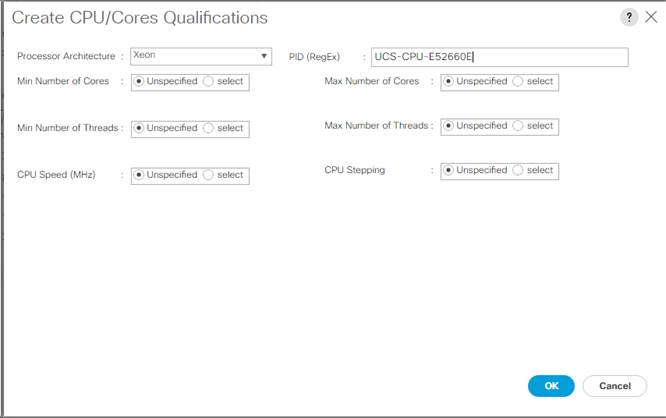
6.    Select Create CPU/Cores Qualifications.

7.    Select Xeon for the Processor/Architecture.

8.    Select UCS-CPU-E52660E as the PID.

9.    Click OK to create the CPU/Core qualification.

10.  Click OK to create the policy then OK for the confirmation.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_39.jpg)

**Create Server BIOS Policy**

To create a server BIOS policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

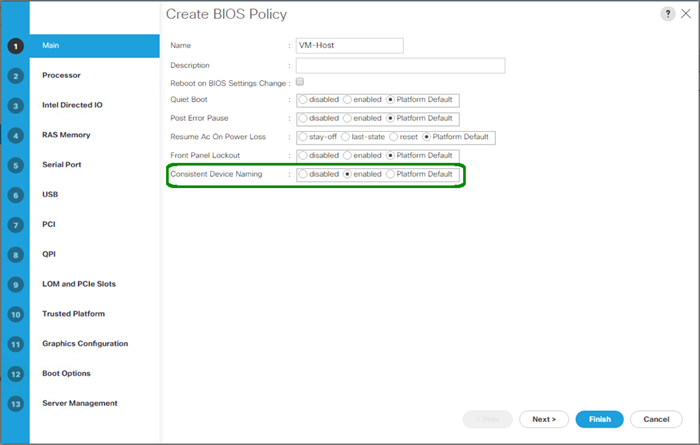
3.    Right-click BIOS Policies.

4.    Select Create BIOS Policy.

5.    Enter VM-Host as the BIOS policy name.

6.    Change the Quiet Boot setting to disabled.

7.    Change Consistent Device Naming to enabled.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_40.png)

8.    Click the Processor tab on the left.

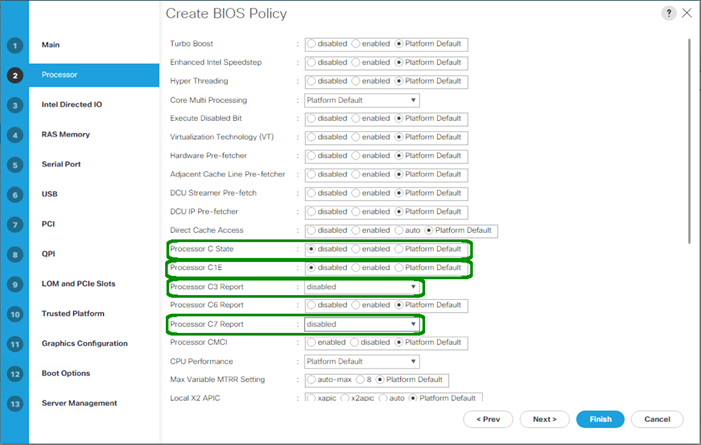
9.    Set the following within the Processor tab:

a.     Processor C State -> disabled

b.    Processor C1E -> disabled

c.     Processor C3 Report -> disabled

d.    Processor C7 Report -> disabled

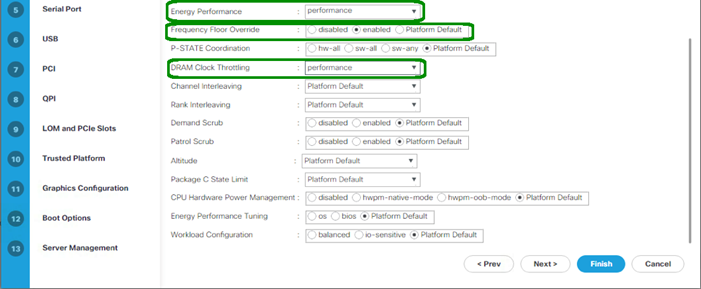
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_41.png)

10.  Scroll down to the remaining Processor options, and select:

a.     Energy Performance -> performance

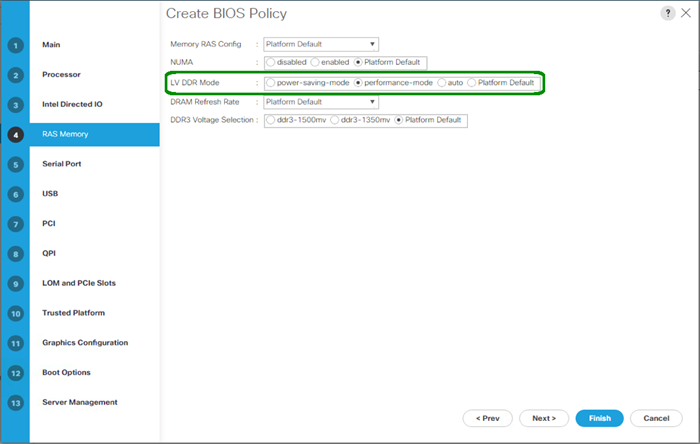
b.    Frequency Floor Override -> enabled

c.     DRAM Clock Throttling -> performance

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_42.png)

11.  Click the RAS Memory option and select:

a.     LV DDR Mode -> performance-mode

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_43.png)

12.  Click Finish to create the BIOS policy.

13.  Click OK.

**Update the Default Maintenance Policy**

To update the default Maintenance Policy, complete the following steps:

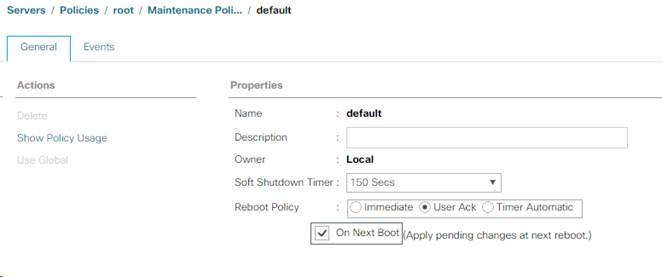
1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Select Maintenance Policies > default.

4.    Change the Reboot Policy to User Ack.

5.    Click “On Next Boot” to delegate maintenance windows to server administrators.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_44.jpg)

6.    Click Save Changes.

7.    Click OK to accept the change.

**Create vNIC Templates**

To create multiple virtual network interface card (vNIC) templates for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps. A total of 2 vNIC Templates will be created.

**Create Infrastructure vNICs**

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vNIC Templates.

4.    Select Create vNIC Template.

5.    Enter Infra-A as the vNIC template name.

6.    Keep Fabric A selected.

7.    Select the Enable Failover checkbox.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Selecting Failover is a critical step to improve link failover time by handling it at the hardware level, and to guard against NIC any potential for NIC failure not being detected by the virtual switch.

8.    Select Primary Template for Redundancy Type.

9.    Leave the Peer Redundancy Template set to <not set>.

10.  Under Target, make sure that only the Adapter checkbox is selected.

11.  Select Updating Template as the Template Type.

12.  Under VLANs, select the checkboxes for IB-MGMT, Infra-NFS, vMotion  VM-Traffic, and Native-VLAN VLANs.

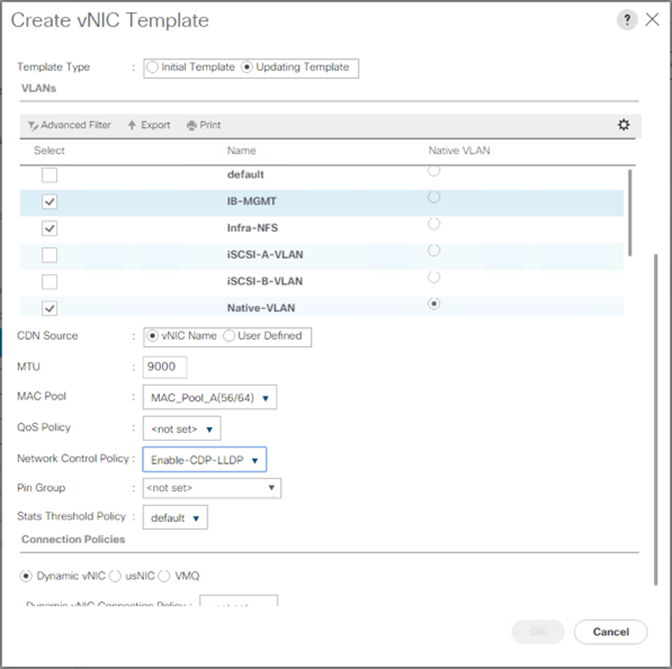
13.  Set Native-VLAN as the native VLAN.

14.  Select vNIC Name for the CDN Source.

15.  For MTU, enter 9000.

16.  In the MAC Pool list, select MAC-Pool-A.

17.  In the Network Control Policy list, select Enable-CDP-LLDP.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_45.png)

18.  Click OK to create the vNIC template.

19.  Click OK.

Create the secondary redundancy template Infra-B:

1.    Select LAN on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vNIC Templates.

4.    Select Create vNIC Template

5.    Enter Infra-B as the vNIC template name.

6.    Select Fabric B.

7.    Select the Enable Failover checkbox.

8.    Set Redundancy Type to Secondary Template.

9.    Select Infra-A for the Peer Redundancy Template.

10.  In the MAC Pool list, select MAC-Pool-B. The MAC Pool is all that needs to be selected for the Secondary Template.

11.  Click OK to create the vNIC template.

12.  Click OK.

**Create LAN Connectivity Policy for FC Boot**

To configure the necessary Infrastructure LAN Connectivity Policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click LAN on the left.

2.    Select LAN > Policies > root.

3.    Right-click LAN Connectivity Policies.

4.    Select Create LAN Connectivity Policy.

5.    Enter FC-Boot as the name of the policy.

6.    Click the upper Add button to add a vNIC.

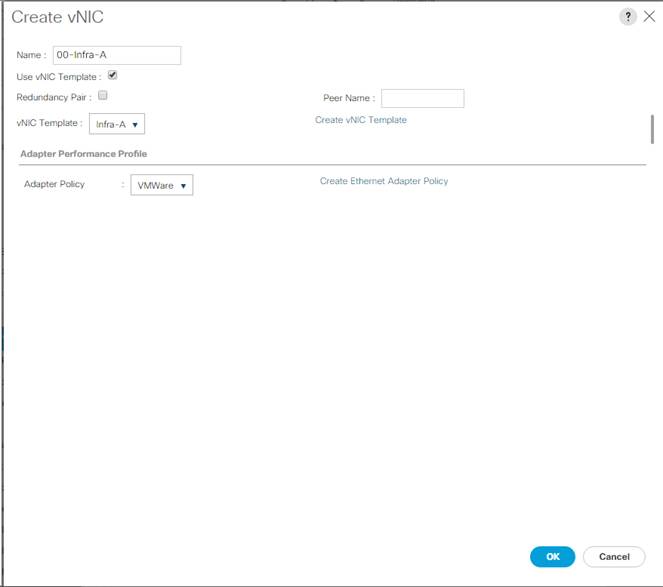
7.    In the Create vNIC dialog box, enter 00-Infra-A as the name of the vNIC.

8.    Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.

9.    In the vNIC Template list, select Infra-A.

10.  In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

11.  Click OK to add this vNIC to the policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_145.jpg)

12.  Click the upper Add button to add another vNIC to the policy.

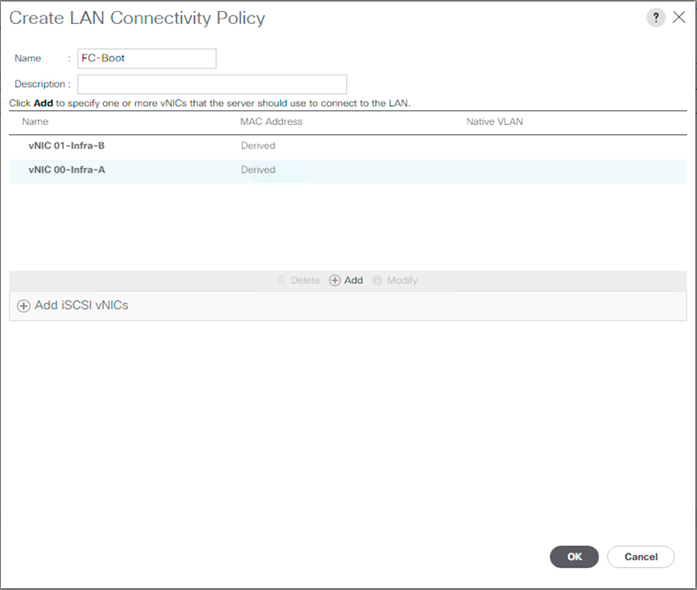
13.  In the Create vNIC box, enter 01-Infra-B as the name of the vNIC.

14.  Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.

15.  In the vNIC Template list, select Infra-B.

16.  In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

17.  Click OK to add the vNIC to the policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_47.png)

18.  Click OK, then click OK again to create the LAN Connectivity Policy.

**Create vMedia Policy for VMware ESXi 6.5a Install Boot**

In the NetApp ONTAP setup steps an HTTP web server is required, which will be used for hosting ONTAP as well as VMware software. The vMedia Policy created here will map the VMware ESXi 6.5a ISO to the Cisco UCS server in order to boot the ESXi installation.  To create this policy, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, select Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click vMedia Policies.

4.    Select Create vMedia Policy.

5.    Name the policy ESXi-6.5a-HTTP.

6.    Enter “Mounts ISO for ESXi 6.5a” in the Description field.

7.    Click Add.

8.    Name the mount ESXi-6.5a-HTTP.

9.    Select the CDD Device Type.

10.  Select the HTTP Protocol.

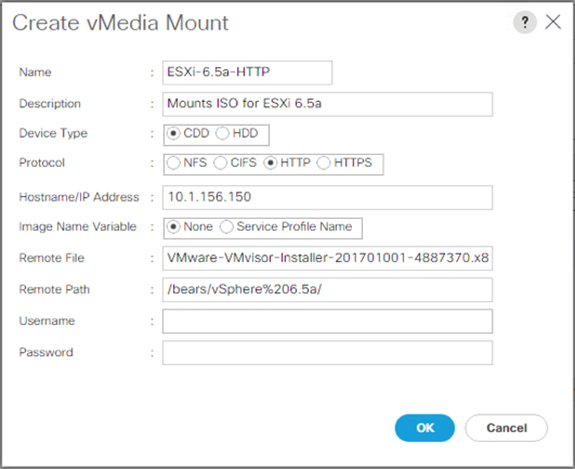
11.  Enter the IP Address of the web server.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Since DNS server IPs were not entered into the KVM IP earlier, it is necessary to enter the IP of the web server instead of the hostname.

12.  Enter VMware-VMvisor-Installer-201701001-4887370.x86\_64.iso as the Remote File name.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          This VMware ESXi 6.5a ISO can be downloaded from [VMware Downloads](https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=ESXI650A&productId=614).

13.  Enter the web server path to the ISO file in the Remote Path field.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_48.png)

14.  Click OK to create the vMedia Mount.

15.  Click OK then OK again to complete creating the vMedia Policy.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          For any new servers added to the Cisco UCS environment the vMedia service profile template can be used to install the ESXi host.  On first boot the host will boot into the ESXi installer since the SAN mounted disk is empty. After ESXi is installed, the vMedia will not be referenced as long as the boot disk is accessible.

**Create Boot Policy (FCoE Boot)**

This procedure applies to a Cisco UCS environment in which two FCoE logical interfaces (LIFs) are on cluster node 1 and two FCoE LIFs are on cluster node 2 for each Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect:

To create a boot policy for the Cisco UCS environment, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Policies > root.

3.    Right-click Boot Policies.

4.    Select Create Boot Policy.

5.    Enter Boot-FC-Fabric-A as the name of the boot policy.

6.    Optional: Enter a description for the boot policy.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          Do not select the Reboot on Boot Order Change checkbox.

7.    Keep the Reboot on Boot Order Change option cleared.

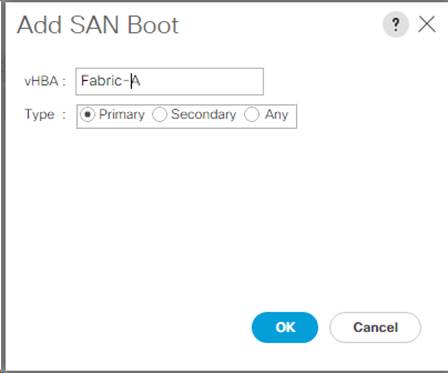
8.    Expand the Local Devices drop-down menu and select Add Remote CD/DVD.

9.    Expand the vHBAs drop-down menu and select Add SAN Boot.

10.  Select the Primary Type.

11.  Enter Fabric-A in the vHBA field.

12.  Confirm that Primary is selected for the Type option.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_146.jpg)

13.  Click OK to add the SAN boot initiator.

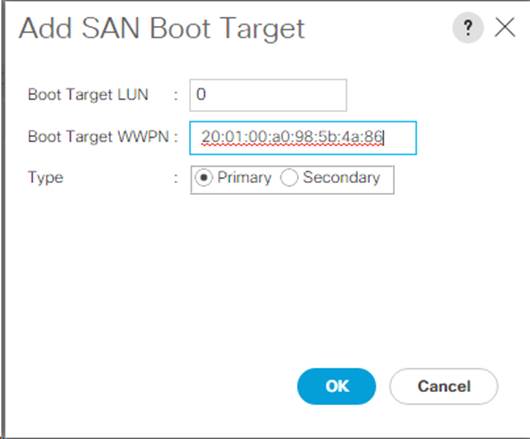
14.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

15.  Keep 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

16.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif01a.

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          To obtain this information, log in to the storage cluster and run the network interface show command.

17.  Select Primary for the SAN boot target type.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_147.jpg)

16.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

17.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

18.  Enter 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

19.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif02a.

20.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

21.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot.

22.  In the Add SAN Boot dialog box, enter Fabric-B in the vHBA box.

23.  The SAN boot type should automatically be set to Secondary.

24.  Click OK to add the SAN boot initiator.

25.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

26.  Keep 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

27.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif01b.

28.  Select Primary for the SAN boot target type.

29.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

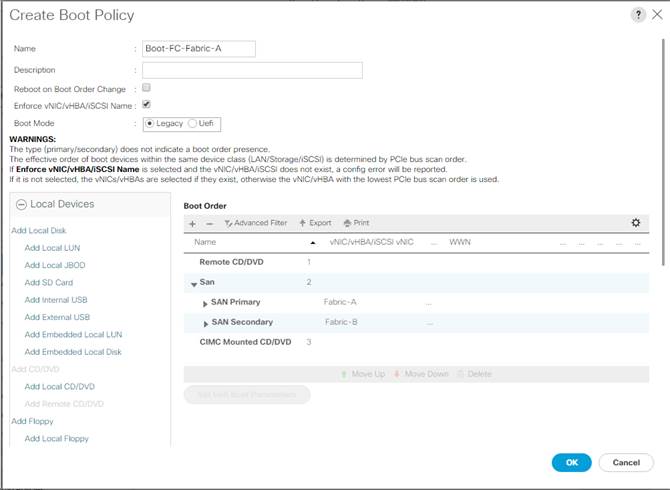
30.  From the vHBA drop-down menu, select Add SAN Boot Target.

31.  Keep 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.

32.  Enter the WWPN for fcp\_lif02b.

33.  Click OK to add the SAN boot target.

34.  Expand CIMC Mounted Media and select Add CIMC Mounted CD/DVD.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_148.jpg)

35.  Click OK, then click OK again to create the boot policy.

**Create Service Profile Templates (FCoE Boot)**

In this procedure, one service profile template for Infrastructure ESXi hosts is created for Fabric A boot.

To create the service profile template, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Service Profile Templates > root.

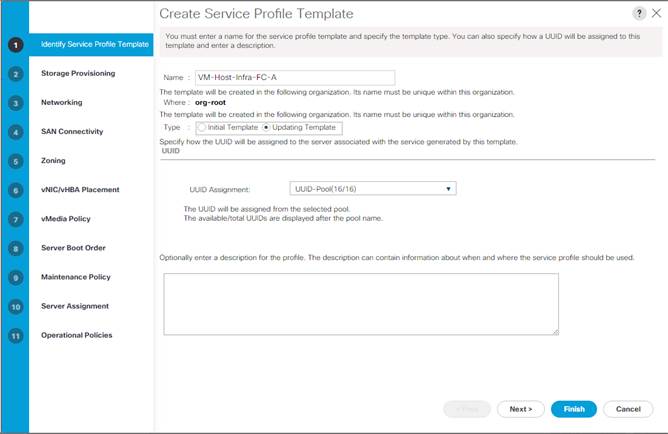
3.    Right-click root.

4.    Select Create Service Profile Template to open the Create Service Profile Template wizard.

5.    Enter VM-Host-Infra-FC-A as the name of the service profile template. This service profile template is configured to boot from storage node 1 on fabric A.

6.    Select the “Updating Template” option.

7.    Under UUID, select UUID\_Pool as the UUID pool.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_149.jpg)

8.    Click Next.

**Configure Storage Provisioning**

1.    If you have servers with no physical disks, click on the Local Disk Configuration Policy and select the SAN-Boot Local Storage Policy. Otherwise, select the default Local Storage Policy.

2.    Click Next.

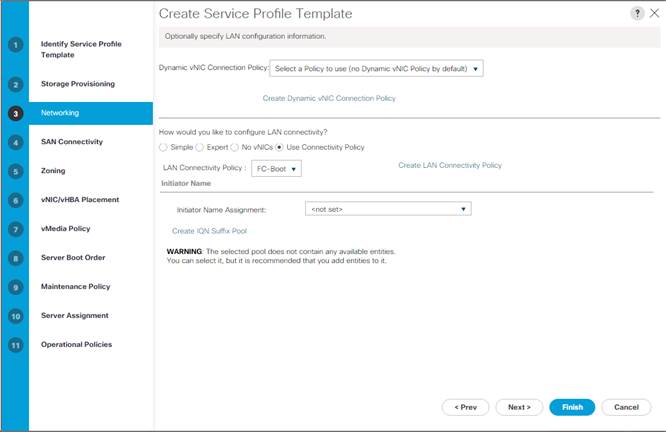
**Configure Networking Options**

1.    Keep the default setting for Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy.

2.    Select the “Use Connectivity Policy” option to configure the LAN connectivity.

3.    Select FC-Boot from the LAN Connectivity Policy pull-down.

4.    Leave Initiator Name Assignment at <not set>.

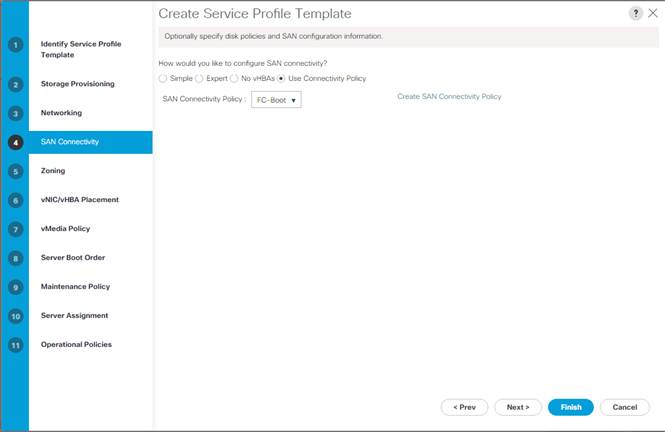
[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_150.jpg)

5.    Click Next.

**Configure Storage Options**

1.    Select the Use Connectivity Policy option for the “How would you like to configure SAN connectivity?” field.

2.    Pick the FC-Boot option from the SAN Connectivity Policy pull-down.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_151.jpg)

3.    Click Next.

**Configure Zoning Options**

1.    Set no Zoning options and click Next.

**Configure vNIC/HBA Placement**

1.    In the “Select Placement” list, leave the placement policy as “Let System Perform Placement”.

2.    Click Next.

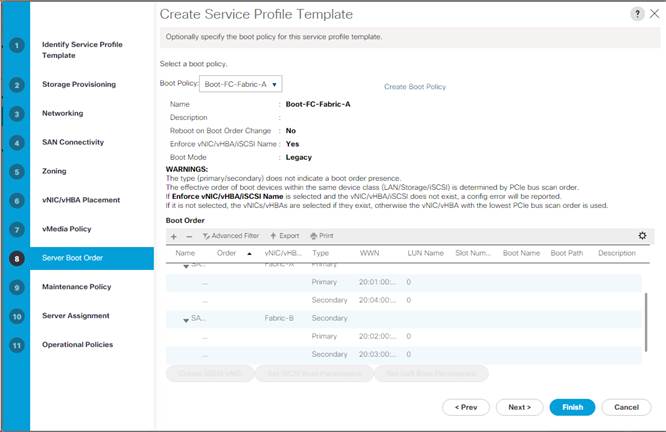
**Configure vMedia Policy**

1.    Do not select a vMedia Policy.

2.    Click Next.

**Configure Server Boot Order**

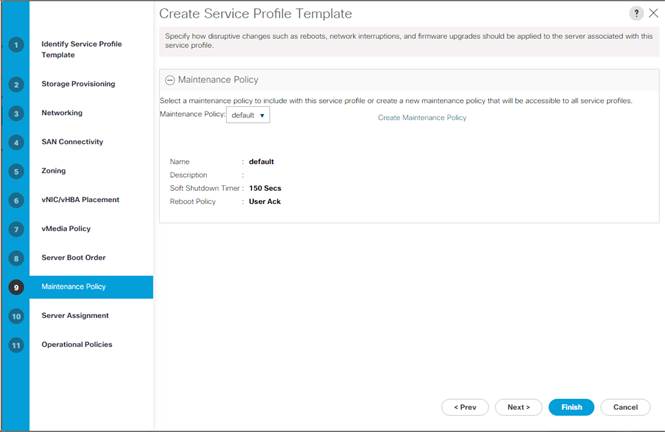
1.    Select Boot-FC-Fabric-A for Boot Policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_152.jpg)

2.    Click Next to continue to the next section.

**Configure Maintenance Policy**

1.    Change the Maintenance Policy to default.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_153.jpg)

2.    Click Next.

**Configure Server Assignment**

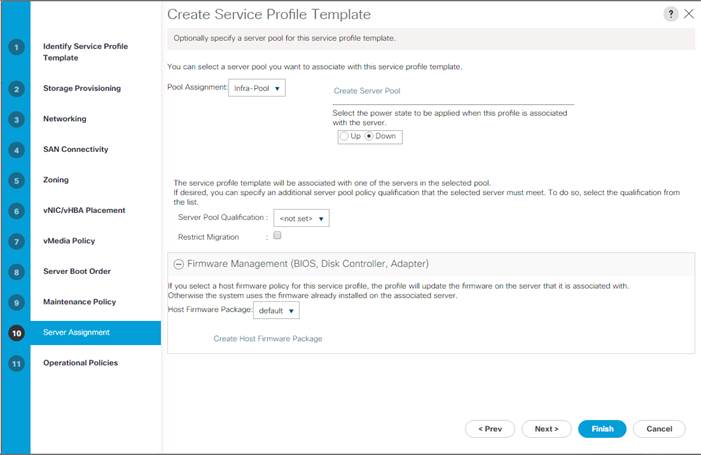
To configure server assignment, complete the following steps:

1.    In the Pool Assignment list, select Infra-Pool.

3.    Select Down as the power state to be applied when the profile is associated with the server.

4.    Optional: select “UCS-Broadwell” for the Server Pool Qualification.

5.    Expand Firmware Management at the bottom of the page and select the default policy.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_154.jpg)

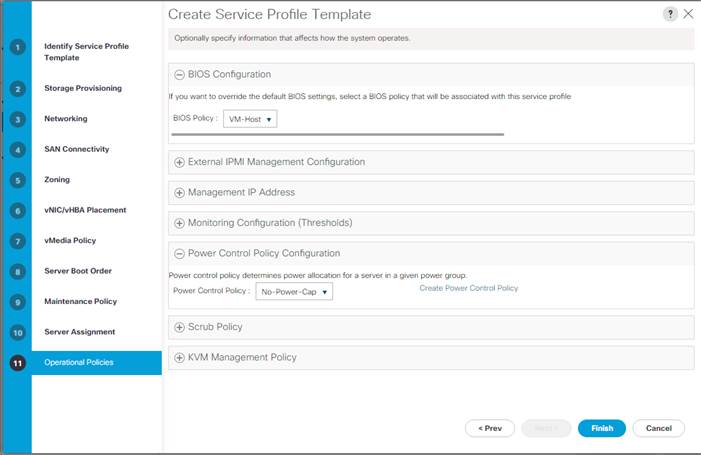
6.    Click Next.

**Configure Operational Policies**

To configure the operational policies, complete the following steps:

1.    In the BIOS Policy list, select VM-Host.

2.    Expand Power Control Policy Configuration and select No-Power-Cap in the Power Control Policy list.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_155.jpg)

3.    Click Finish to create the service profile template.

4.    Click OK in the confirmation message.

**Create vMedia Service Profile Template**

To create service profiles from the service profile template, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Service Profile Templates > root > Service Template VM-Host-Infra-FC-A.

3.    Right-click Service Template VM-Host-Infra-FC-A and select Create a Clone.

4.    Name the clone VM-Host-Infra-FC-A-vM and click OK.

5.    Select Service Template VM-Host-Infra-FC-A-vM.

6.    In the right pane, select the vMedia Policy tab.

7.    Under Actions, select Modify vMedia Policy.

8.    Using the pulldown, select the ESXi-6.0U2-HTTP vMedia Policy.

9.    Click OK then OK again to complete modifying the Service Profile Template.

Create Service Profiles

To create service profiles from the service profile template, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to UCS Manager, click Servers on the left.

2.    Select Service Profile Templates > root > Service Template VM-Host-Infra-FC-A-vM.

3.    Right-click VM-Host-Infra-FC-A-vM and select Create Service Profiles from Template.

4.    Enter VM-Host-Infra-0 as the service profile prefix.

5.    Enter 1 as “Name Suffix Starting Number.”

6.    Enter 2 as the “Number of Instances.”

7.    Click OK to create the service profiles.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_156.jpg)

8.    Click OK in the confirmation message.

**Add More Servers to FlexPod Unit**

Additional server pools, service profile templates, and service profiles can be created in the respective organizations to add more servers to the FlexPod unit. All other pools and policies are at the root level and can be shared among the organizations.

**Gather Necessary Information**

After the Cisco UCS service profiles have been created, each infrastructure server in the environment will have a unique configuration. To proceed with the FlexPod deployment, specific information must be gathered from each Cisco UCS server and from the NetApp controllers. Insert the required information into Table 8 and Table 9.

Table 8    WWPNs from NetApp Storage

| SVM | Target LIF WWPN (FC) |
| --- | --- |
| Infra-SVM | fcp\_lif01a |
| fcp\_lif01b |
| fcp\_lif02a |
| fcp\_lif02b |

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          To obtain the FC WWPNs, run the network interface show command on the storage cluster management interface.

Table 9    FC WWPNs for Fabric A and Fabric B

| Cisco UCS Service Profile Name | Initiator: WWPNs (FC) | Variables |
| --- | --- | --- |
| VM-Host-Infra-01 |  | <vm-host-infra-01-wwpna>  <vm-host-infra-01-wwpnb> |
| VM-Host-Infra-02 |  | <vm-host-infra-02-wwpna>  <vm-host-infra-02-wwpnb> |

[*](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_0.png)          To obtain the FC vHBA WWPN information in Cisco UCS Manager GUI, go to Servers > Service Profiles > root. Click each service profile and then click the “Storage” tab, then “vHBAs” tab on the right. The WWPNs are displayed in the table at the bottom of the page.

**Adding Direct Connected Tenant FCoE Storage**

To add FCoE storage from an additional storage SVM, two storage connection policies, one for each fabric must be added in Cisco UCS Manager and attached to vHBA Initiator Groups in the SAN Connectivity Policy.  These steps were not shown in the initial deployment above because it is not necessary to zone boot targets.  Boot targets are automatically zoned in the fabric interconnect when zoning is enabled on the fabric VSAN.  To add direct connected tenant FCoE storage from a tenant SVM, complete the following steps:

**Create Storage Connection Policies**

In this procedure, one storage connection policy is created for each fabric.

To create the storage connection policies, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Right-click SAN > Policies > root > Storage Connection Policies and select Create Storage Connection Policy.

3.    Name the policy to indicate a tenant on Fabric A.

4.    Select the Single Initiator Multiple Targets Zoning Type.

5.    Click Add to add a target.

6.    Enter the WWPN of the first fabric A FCoE LIF in the tenant SVM connected to fabric interconnect A.  Select Path A and VSAN VSAN-A. Click OK.

7.    Click Add to add a target.

8.    Enter the WWPN of the second fabric A FCoE LIF in the tenant SVM connected to fabric interconnect A.  Select Path A and VSAN VSAN-A. Click OK.

9.    Click OK then click OK again to complete adding the Storage Connection Policy.

10.  Right-click SAN > Policies > root > Storage Connection Policies and select Create Storage Connection Policy.

11.  Name the policy to indicate a tenant on Fabric B.

12.  Select the Single Initiator Multiple Targets Zoning Type.

13.  Click Add to add a target.

14.  Enter the WWPN of the first fabric B FCoE LIF in the tenant SVM connected to fabric interconnect B.  Select Path B and VSAN VSAN-B. Click OK.

15.  Click Add to add a target.

16.  Enter the WWPN of the second fabric B FCoE LIF in the tenant SVM connected to fabric interconnect B.  Select Path B and VSAN VSAN-B. Click OK.

17.  Click OK then OK again to complete adding the Storage Connection Policy.

**Map Storage Connection Policies vHBA Initiator Groups in SAN Connectivity Policy**

In this procedure, storage connection policies are mapped to vHBA initiator groups for each fabric.

To create the storage connection policy mappings, complete the following steps:

1.    In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN on the left.

2.    Select SAN > Policies > root > SAN Connectivity Policies > FC-Boot.

3.    In the center pane, select the vHBA Initiator Groups tab.

4.    Click Add to add a vHBA Initiator Group.

5.    Name the group Fabric A and select the Fabric A Initiator.

6.    Use the pulldown to select the Fabric A Storage Connection Policy.

7.    Click OK and OK to complete adding the Initiator Group.

8.    Click Add to add a vHBA Initiator Group.

9.    Name the group Fabric B and select the Fabric B Initiator.

10.  Use the pulldown to select the Fabric B Storage Connection Policy.

11.  Click OK and OK to complete adding the Initiator Group.

**FlexPod Backups**

**Cisco UCS Backup**

Automated backup of the UCS domain is important for recovery of the UCS Domain from issues ranging catastrophic failure to human error.  There is a native backup solution within UCS that allows local or remote backup using FTP/TFTP/SCP/SFTP as options.

Backups created can be a binary file containing the Full State, which can be used for a restore to the original or a replacement pair of fabric interconnects.  Alternately this XML configuration file consisting of All configurations, just System configurations, or just Logical configurations of the UCS Domain.  For scheduled backups, options will be Full State or All Configuration, backup of just the System or Logical configurations can be manually initiated.

Specification of the backup can be done by completing the following steps within the Cisco UCS Manager GUI:

1.    Select Admin within the Navigation pane and select All.

2.    Click on the Policy Backup & Export tab within All.

3.    For a Full State Backup, All Configuration Backup, or both, specify the following:

a.     Hostname : <IP or FQDN of host that will receive the backup>

b.    Protocol: [FTP/TFTP/SCP/SFTP]

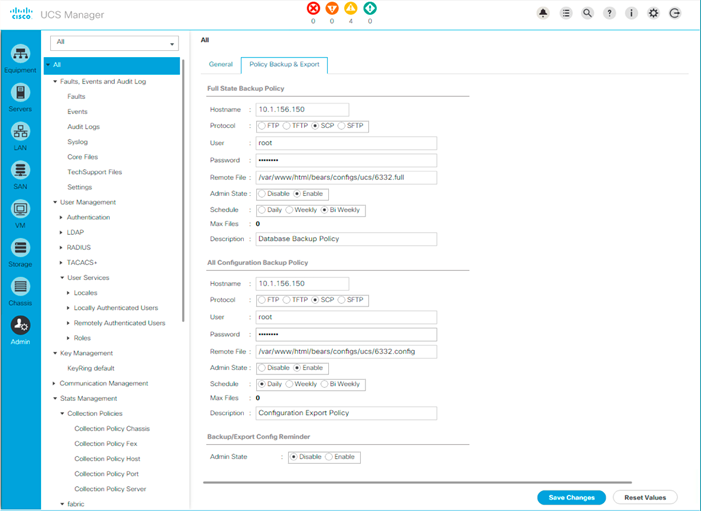
c.     User: <account on host to authenticate>

d.    Password: <password for account on host>

e.    Remote File: <full path and filename prefix for backup file>

f.      Admin State: <select Enable to activate the schedule on save, Disable to disable schedule on save>

g.    Schedule: [Daily/Weekly/Bi Weekly]

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_157.png)

4.    Click Save Changes to create the Policy.

**Cisco Nexus Backups**

The configuration of the Cisco Nexus 9000 switches can be backed up manually at any time with the copy command, but automated backups can be put in place with the NX-OS feature scheduler.  An example of setting up automated configuration backups of one of the FlexPod 9332PQ switches is shown below:

bb04-9332-a# conf t

Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.

bb04-9332-a(config)# feature scheduler

bb04-9332-a(config)# scheduler logfile size 1024

bb04-9332-a(config)# scheduler job name backup-cfg

bb04-9332-a(config-job)# copy running-config tftp://192.168.156.155/9332/$(SWITCHNAME)-cfg.$(TIMESTAMP) vrf management

bb04-9332-a(config-job)# exit

bb04-9332-a(config)# scheduler schedule name daily

bb04-9332-a(config-schedule)# job name backup-cfg

bb04-9332-a(config-schedule)# time daily 2:00

bb04-9332-a(config-schedule)# end

Show the job that has been setup:

bb04-9332-a# sh scheduler job

Job Name: backup-cfg

--------------------

copy running-config tftp://192.168.156.155/9332/$(SWITCHNAME)-cfg.$(TIMESTAMP) vrf management

==============================================================================

bb04-9332-a# show scheduler schedule

Schedule Name       : daily

---------------------------

User Name           : admin

Schedule Type       : Run every day at 2 Hrs 0 Mins

Last Execution Time : Sun Apr  9 02:00:00 2017

Last Completion Time: Sun Apr  9 02:00:01 2017

Execution count     : 3

-----------------------------------------------

     Job Name            Last Execution Status

-----------------------------------------------

backup-cfg                        Success (0)

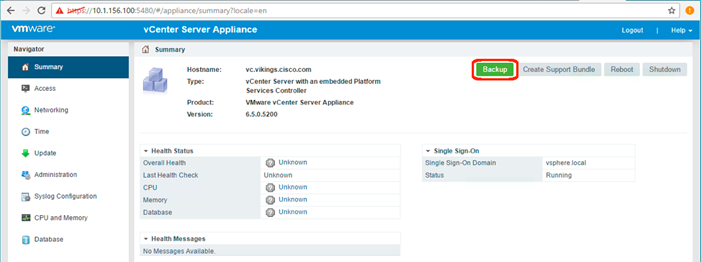
==============================================================================

Full documentation of use for the feature scheduler can be found at: <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus9000/sw/7-x/system_management/configuration/guide/b_Cisco_Nexus_9000_Series_NX-OS_System_Management_Configuration_Guide_7x/b_Cisco_Nexus_9000_Series_NX-OS_System_Management_Configuration_Guide_7x_chapter_01010.html>

**VMware VCSA Backup**

Basic backup of the vCenter Server Appliance is also available within the native capabilities of the VCSA, though within the default solution this is manually initiated provide a scheduled solution.  To create a backup, complete the following steps:

1.    Connect to the VCSA Console at https://<VCSA IP>:5480.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_158.png)

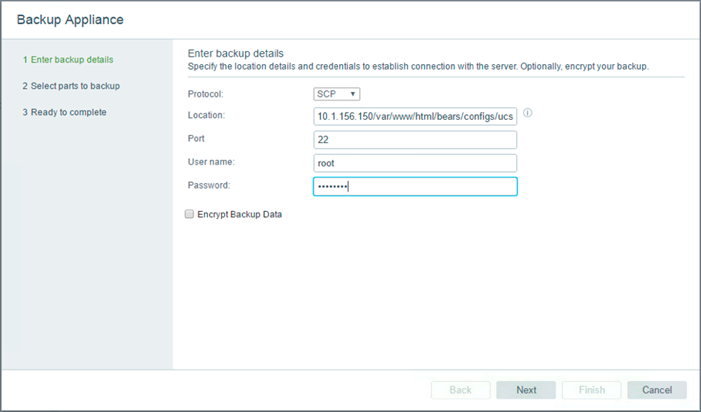
2.    Click Backup within the Summary section to open up the Backup Appliance Dialogue.

3.    Specify:

a.     the Protocol to use [HTTPS/HTTP/SCP/FTPS/FTP]

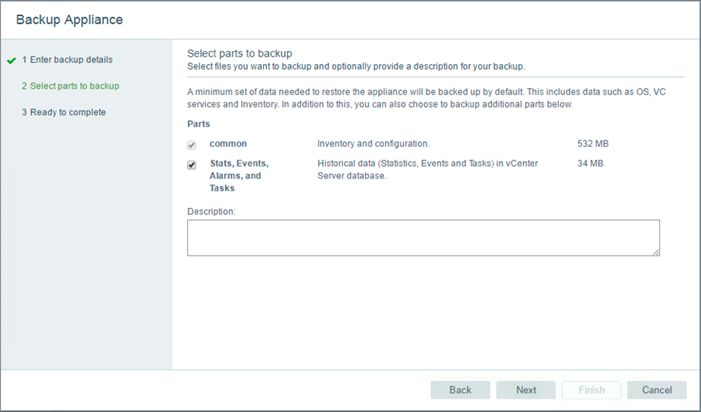
b.    location of an empty directory to be used for the backup

c.     the User name and password

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_159.png)

4.    Click Next.

5.    De-select some parts if they should be excluded from the backup.

[](https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc.docx/_jcr_content/renditions/flexpod_esxi65_n9fc_160.png)

6.    Click Next.

7.    Review the options selected and click Finish to begin the backup.

Restoration can be initiated with the backed up files using the Restore function of the VCSA 6.5 Installer.

**Breakout Interface Configuration in the Cisco Nexus 9332PQ Switches**

The 40Gb end to end FlexPod design in this document uses a pair of Nexus 9332PQ which is built with all ports being of the 40 Gbps Quad Small Form Factor Pluggable Plus (QSFP+) type.  If there is a need to directly support a 10Gb Small Form Pluggable Plus (SFP+), this can be configured within the switch, and connected to the 10Gb SFP+ device using a supported QSFP+ Breakout Cable.

Configuration of the QSFP+ ports will use the interface breakout command as shown in this example to turn the 40G interface Ethernet 1/1 into 4x10G interfaces:

bb04-9332-a(config)# show running-config interface Ethernet1/1

interface Ethernet1/1

  no switchport

bb04-9332-a(config)# interface breakout module 1 port 5 map 10g-4x

bb04-9332-a(config)# show running-config interface Ethernet1/1/1-4

interface Ethernet1/1/1

interface Ethernet1/1/2

interface Ethernet1/1/3

interface Ethernet1/1/4

Breakout configurations that are no longer needed can be reverted with the no interface breakout command:

bb04-9332-a(config)# no interface breakout module 1 port 1 map 10g-4x

bb04-9332-a(config)#

**About the Authors**

John George, Technical Marketing Engineer, Cisco UCS Data Center Solutions Engineering, Cisco Systems, Inc.

John George recently moved to Cisco from NetApp and has been focused on designing, developing, validating, and supporting the FlexPod Converged Infrastructure since its inception. Before his roles with FlexPod, he supported and administered a large worldwide training network and VPN infrastructure. John holds a Master's degree in Computer Engineering from Clemson University.

**Karthick Radhakrishnan, Systems Architect, Converged Infrastructure Engineering, NetApp**

Karthick Radhakrishnan is a Systems Architect in the NetApp Infrastructure and Cloud Engineering team. He focuses on the validating, supporting, implementing cloud infrastructure solutions that include NetApp products. Prior to his current role, he was a networking tools developer at America Online supporting AOL transit data network. Karthick worked in the IT industry for more than 14 years and he holds Master's degree in Computer Application.

**Acknowledgements**

For their support and contribution to the design, validation, and creation of this Cisco Validated Design, the authors would like to thank:

         Ramesh Isaac, Cisco Systems, Inc.

         Aaron Kirk, NetApp